

Unit 1 in brief

Coming home

Important vocabulary

activity	نشاط	mirror	مرآة
alone	بمفرده	poor	فقير
armchair	كرسي بمسند	prison	سجن
attractive	جذاب	profile	ملف شخصي
basin	حوض	railway line	خط سكة حديد
block of flats	عمارة سكنية	routine	روتين يومي
bookshelf	رف الكتب	share	يشارك
carpet	سجاده	sofa	كنبة
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	tap	حنفية
curtains	ستائر	tent	خيمه
cushion	مخدة	terrible	سيء
daily	يومي	text	نص او يرسل رسالة نصية
feed	يطعم	typical	نموذجي - معتاد
interview	مقابلة	village	قرية
lamp	مصباح	wardrobe	دولاب ملابس
large	كبير / واسع	way	طريق

Prepositions and expressions

go to bed	يذهب للنوم	in many ways	بطرق مختلفة
walk to	يمشي الي	ride a bike	يركب الدراجة
listen to	يستمع الي	text friends	يراسل أصدقاء
work at	يعمل في	make dinner	يجعل العشاء
live with	يعيش مع	blocks of flat	عمارة سكنية
help to	يساعد في	on the sofa	علي الكنبه
help + مصدر + مفعول	يساعد .. في ...	on his way to	في طريقه الي ..
drive me to school	يوصلني المدرسة	go for a walk	يخرج يمشي
this is a photo for..	هذه صورة لـ ..	do housework	يقوم بشغل البيت
at the beginning of..	في بداية	cup of tea	كوب شاي
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	on a typical day	في يوم مشابه
thank you for +.. ing	شكرا لك علي ..	practise English	يمارس الانجليزية
have a breakfast break	يأخذ راحة للإفطار	keep clothes	يحفظ الملابس
share lunch with	يتقاسم الغذاء مع	get dressed	يرتدي ملابس
take...away	يأخذ... بعيدا	work hard	يعمل بجد
belong to	يخص / ينتمي الي	home with a garden	منزل بحديقة
lots of	كثير من	around the world	حول العالم
in prison	في السجن	on a bookshelf	علي رف كتب
write a reply to	يكتب رد لـ	careful with	حريص علي
tell about	يخبر عن	come from	قادم من
move from...to...	ينتقل من ... الي	full of	ممتلئ بـ
an outside tap	حنفية خارجية	walk to	يمشي الي

Language Notes

Arrive - Reach - Get to

لا فرق بينهما الا في الاستخدام فقط

- نستخدم (Arrive in) عندما نعبر عن وصولنا لمدينة، او دول او نشير الى زمن وصولنا كشهر او تاريخ او فصل
- نستخدم (Arrive at) عندما نعبر عن وصولنا الى اماكن داخل المدينة
- مثلا محطة قطار ، محطة باص ، متحف ، مطار ، صالة سينما ، مطعم الخ .. أي مباني او اي اجزاء من المباني.
- نستخدم (reach) وهي ايضا بمعنى يصل الى او يبلغ شيئا او هدفا ولكن بدون استخدام اي حرف جر بعدها
- نستخدم (get to) وهي ايضا بمعنى يصل الى وهي الاكثر شيوعا واستخداما في المحادثات
- ملحوظة : تستخدم الأفعال السابقة جميعا مع كلمة (home) بدون حرف جر

Routine- Red tape

- > Routine روتين يومي
- > red tape روتين حكومي

help

- > help + مصدر / to + مصدر + مفعول

By – In – On

- > by + وسيلة مواصلات
- > in + وسائل المواصلات التي لا يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها (وسائل المواصلات التي يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها)
- > on + وسائل المواصلات التي يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها (وسائل المواصلات التي يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها)

too - either

- > Too أيضا (في اخر الاثبات والسؤال)
- > Either أيضا (في اخر النفي)

That's why - because - because of

- > That's why \ so + فاعل + فعل لذلك
- > Because + فاعل + فعل لان
- > Because of + اسم / V + ing بسبب

Work in / at - work with - work for

- > Work in / at + مكان يعمل في
- > Work with يعمل مع
- > Work for يعمل لـ

tap - tape

- > Tap حنفية / صنبور
- > Tape شريط

EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People put across windows to keep the light out.
 a rugs b curtains c cushions d sheets
2. This bed is very I slept very well!
 a comfortable b careful c certain d interesting
3. My grandparents live in a town. It isn't far from here.
 a nearby b near c next to d far
4. I'm looking my pen – have you seen it?
 a about b for c on d after
5. you should work to succeed.
 a quick b happy c hard d lazy
6. This isn't your book. It to your sister. Don't play with it.
 a gives b belongs c owns d spends
7. Tourists like visiting places.
 a ugly b dirty c dull d attractive
8. I go to the baker's with my mother; we always buy bread in the morning. **WB**
 a day b dairy c daily d dial
9. My brothers always TV in the evening. **SB**
 a listen b go c help d watch
10. I saw Ahmed's father on his to work this morning. **WB**
 a away b way c say d street
11. We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday, it's our
 a work b routine c job d mail
12. Can I use your phone to my mother, because mine is not working.
 a tell b cold c call d cool
13. I always a walk after having dinner at 10 'clock.
 a listen to b go for c read on d help to
14. My favourite is English.
 a subject b sport c hobby d place
15. Our father is very kind. He always helps us housework.
 a did b doing c do d done
16. You shouldn't too much TV.
 a match b watch c catch d patch

Final Revision

17. My unique style in reading is reading the sofa.

- a in b of c at d on

18. Come and sit on this Four people can sit on it. **WB**

- a chair b table c desk d sofa

19. My parents sometimes get late.

- a at home b for home c to home d home

20. This is a photo my family .

- a at b for c of d in

21. Captain Salwa , Could we you for our school magazine ?

- a view b interview c routine d text

22. I and my father sometimes chess

- a play b do c take d have

23. Students should get early on school days.

- a to b with c up d of

24. Her family were so They couldn't buy her new clothes.

- a ugly b poor c beautiful d rich

25. I like reading short stories, it's my favourite

- a hobby b happy c habit d subject

26. My sister her cat every day , she likes it .

- a feeds b food c eats d feet

27. He was sent to because he killed his neighbour.

- a person b prison c present d prize

28. I always my homework after coming home.

- a make b play c do d take

29. I walk school with my brothers.

- a to b at c with d for

30. I go to school by bus my friend Dina.

- a for b by c at d with

31. Excuse me, Can you take me your way to work ?

- a in b for c on d with

32. To means to give food to a person , group or an animal.

- a feed b fool c feel d reed

33. I the same room with my brother.

- a share b buy c get d build

34. I always walk school with my friends.
 a for b to c at d in
35. Let's swimming.
 a play b do c visit d go
36. Giza is a large with a lot of monuments.
 a square b country c street d city
37. Zeina spends much time in front of the looking at herself.
 a wardrobe b bed c mirror d drawer
38. We changed all the to match the windows.
 a sofas b beds c curtains d carpets
39. After dinner, I sit in a deep to read my favourite book.
 a seat b armchair c wheelchair d bath
40. My bedroom is red and blue.
 a car b TV c carpet d mirror
41. Can you your city for me ?
 a protect b design c explode d describe
42. They bought a house because their old one was small.
 a large b narrow c tiny d little
43. The is the road that the train travels on.
 a railway line b headline c deadline d line
44. If something is terrible. It's
 a very good b very nice c very bad d very rich
45. We have " a breakfast " after the third lesson at school.
 a bark b break c broke d peak
46. My room has a wash
 a sofa b basin c chair d mirror
47. This helps me to read in bed at night.
 a window b curtain c lamp d basin
48. I have a in my bedroom where I wash my face before I go to bed.
 a sofa b mirror c basin d wardrobe
49. Tell me your typical daily routine in Germany!
 a about b off c on d with
50. Our school at three o'clock
 a walks b makes c finishes d feeds

Grammar in brief

المضارع البسيط Present simple

استخدامه

المضارع البسيط ده زمن بستخدمه لما احب أتكلم عن حدث يتكرر بشكل دوري

تكوينه

He / She / It (الفاعل المفرد) ----- **+s/ es / ies** الفعل

EX He **likes** apples. هو يحب التفاح

I / We / You / They (الفاعل الجمع) ----- مصدر (فعل بدون اضافة)

EX I **like** apples. أنا أحب التفاح

خلي بالك من النقطة الصغيرة دي : شوف الفرق بين (**s / es / ies**) مع المفرد جميع الأفعال يضاف لها **[s]** ما عدا:

- والفعل الذي آخره **[s/sh/ch/o/x/z]** يضاف إليه **[es]**.
- الفعل الذي آخره **[y]** قبلها ساكن تقلب إلى **[ies]**

النفى (لا ..)

He / She / It (الفاعل المفرد) ----- **doesn't +** مصدر

EX He **doesn't like** apples. هو لا يحب التفاح

I / We / You / They (الفاعل الجمع) ----- **don't +** مصدر

EX I **don't like** apples. أنا لا أحب التفاح

كلماته الدالة

<i>always</i>	<i>usually</i>	<i>often</i>	<i>sometimes</i>	<i>Occasionally</i>	<i>never</i>
100%	80%	70%	50%	10 %	0%

طيب مكانها بقي في الجملة بيكون فين ؟؟؟؟ هي بتيجي في موضعين
(1) قبل الفعل , يعني نقول

EX He **always comes** late. (صح)

EX He **comes always** late. (غلط)

(2) بعد الفعل اذا كان هذا الفعل هو (**am / is / are**) , يعني نقول

EX He **always is** late. (غلط)

EX He **is always** late. (صح)

لو حببت اعمل سؤال عن عدد المرات نستخدم

How often + does / do + مصدر ؟ فاعل

الإجابة

ثلاث مرات **Three times** - مرتين **Twice** - مره واحدة **Once** - **Never** - **Sometimes** - **Always**

(**year** - ف الشهر **month** - ف الاسبوع **week** - ف اليوم **day**) **A**

EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I get up late at the weekends. I never get up early.
 a never b always c usually d sometimes
2. What time your first lesson this morning?
 a is b are c does d do
3. She the bus to get to school.
 a taking b take c takes d talk
4. We to play tennis every week in the club.
 a prefers b preferred c preferring d prefer
5. Omer goes swimming on Thursday and Saturday. He goes swimming.
 a never b sometimes c always d usually
6. Ali walks to school on Sunday, Monday, Tuesday and Thursday.
 a often b never c always d usually
7. I have breakfast at 7 o'clock every morning. I have breakfast at that time.
 a often b never c usually d always
8. Has she a personal mobile phone ? -Yes, she has.
 a got b get c gets d getting
9. have a snack at the club ? - Great idea.
 a We shall b Shall we c Have we d Do we
10. use the bathroom, please ? - Sure.
 a Am b Must I c Can I d Where I
11. Ahmed late.
 a often is b is always c always is d is every
12. Birds always in the early morning.
 a singing b to sing c sings d sing
13. Khaled never his homework in the evening.
 a do b does c done d doing
14. What time does he usually work?
 a leave b leaves c leaving d left
15. Roquia a sports car .
 a never drive b drives never c never drives d never

➤ Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1. My mother (**help**) my sister do homework.
2. What (**be**) your favourite subject?
3. He usually (**cook**) lunch.
4. Roquia (**get up**) at six o'clock.
5. Ahmed (**visit/ usually**) her friends.
6. Omer (**have**) three brothers.
7. They (**sleep \ usually**) at 10 pm every night.
8. Where (**do**) he play?
9. Yara (**learn**) slowly.
10. You (**not like**) soup.
11. My daily routine (**be**) the same every.
12. I (**doesn't**) listen to music.
13. (**Does**) you play chess?
14. Zeina (**always is**) ready.
15. He doesn't (**watches**) films.
16. When (**do**) he arrive?

➤ Complete the dialogue:

- Teacher** : What's your (1) ?
Rana : I'm Rana.
Teacher : (2) do you live with ?
Rana : I live with my parents.
Teacher : How (3) time do you spend running?
Rana : I spend four hours running.
Teacher : Do you like (4) ?
Rana : Yes, I like sports. I always (5) tennis with my friend Yara.
Teacher : Thank you, Hana. You can go now.
Rana : Thanks.

➤ Complete the dialogue:

- Amal** : How do you get to school?
Kareem : I take the (1)
Amal : What time is your first lesson this morning?
Kareem : I have maths (2) 8 o'clock.
Amal : Do you (3) to study ?
Kareem : Yes, my (4) subject is English.
Amal : (5) do you go home?
Kareem : I go home at 3 o'clock.
Amal : What do you do at the weekends?
Kareem : I always visit my grandparents.

Test based on unit 1

Listening

>1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

- 1) Rosa is from

a China	b Egypt	c India	d England
---------	---------	---------	-----------
- 2) Rosa shares a room with her

a mother	b sister	c grandmother	d cousin
----------	----------	---------------	----------
- 3) Rosa lives in a /an

a village	b city	c school	d island
-----------	--------	----------	----------
- 4) Her family spend the weekend at

a village	b city	c the sea	d school
-----------	--------	-----------	----------

Language Functions

>2- Complete the following dialogue :

Roquia : What's your brother (1) ?

Yara : His name is Abdul-Rahman.

Roquia : (2) he older than you?

Yara : No, he isn't. He's the (3) person in the family.

Roquia : How (4) is he?

Yara : He's ten years old.

Roquia : What's his favourite sport?

Yara : He (5) playing football.

>Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues (أزهر)

1) Adel : Where do you live ?

Ramy :

2) Nada : ?

Manar : I go to the library twice a week.

Reading Comprehension

>3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

On Sunday, Tom gets up at 10 o'clock. Then he reads his newspaper in the kitchen. He has breakfast at 11.30 and then he telephones his mother in Scotland.

In the afternoon, at 1.00, Tom plays tennis with his sister and after that, they eat dinner in a restaurant. At 6.00, Tom swims for one hour and then he goes by bike to his brother's house. They talk and listen to music. Tom watches television in the evening and drinks a glass of warm milk. He goes to bed at 11.30.

>A- Answer the following question.

1. Where does Tom have breakfast?

.....

2. What time does he play tennis with his sister?

.....

3. How long does Tom swim for?

.....

> b. Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

4. Who does he telephone in the morning?

a His sister

b His brother

c His mother

5. Where does his mother live?

a In England

b In his brother's house

c In Scotland

6. How does Tom go to his brother's house?

a By bike

b By car

c On foot

Vocabulary and Structure

> 4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- In summer, we sleep withopen.

a sofas

b beds

c curtains

d carpets

2- I always help my grandmother.....her shopping.

a of

b with

c for

d to

3- How.....do you watch TV? -twice.

a always

b often

c every

d long

4-sun is bigger than the earth.

a The

b An

c A

d No article

5- In the library, books are arranged on

a bookcases

b book shelves

c book covers

d book desks

6- Be careful! There's a fast car comingus.

a over

b behind

c under

d above

7- I need your camera tosome photos.

a take

b make

c do

d give

8- My favourite sport istennis.

a a

b no article

c the

d an

9- My bedroomis red and blue.

a car

b TV

c carpet

d mirror

10- We sometimessports or play music.

a play

b do

c make

d take

6- Complete the sentences with the correct form:

1) He (don't) go swimming on Fridays.

(.....)

2) Mona (never is) late.

(.....)

3) Does Ahmed(walks) to school?

(.....)

4) Physics(has) the most difficult subject.

(.....)

Writing

> 6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

(**Your weekend**)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 2 in brief How are you feeling?

Important vocabulary			
airport	مطار	news	أخبار
blind	أعمى	park	منتزه / حديقة
calligraphy	الخط العربي	pattern	نموذج
communicate	يتواصل	pity	شفقة
congratulations!	مبروك	port	ميناء
conversation	محادثة	repair	يصلح
deaf	أصم	sewing	خياطة
desert	صحراء	sign language	لغة الإشارة
empathy	تعاطف	skin	جلد
food stall	كشك طعام	striped	مخطط / مقام
grateful	حافظ للجميل	suit	يناسب
greetings	تحيات	suitcase	حقيبة يد
guest	ضيف / نزيل فندق	teenager	مراهق
hanging	معلق	ward	عنبر
interview	مقابلة شخصية	weeding	ازالة الأعشاب

Prepositions and expressions			
look after	يعتني بـ.....	get up	يستيقظ
lots of	كثير من	tell about	يخبر عن
live in	يعيش في	park at	يركن في
stay at	يقيم في	listen to	يستمع لـ.....
spend with	يقضي مع	wave to	يلوح لـ...
excited about	متحمس بخصوص	drive around	يقود حول
communicate with	يتواصل مع	middle of	منتصف
stay in bed	يبقي في السرير	make sure that	يتأكد ان
stay at home	يبقي بالمنزل	at the weekend	في نهاية الاسبوع
feel a bit bored	يشعر بقليل من الملل	do the homework	يقوم بالواجب
have breakfast with	يتناول الإفطار مع	do an activity	يقوم بنشاط
Go on a school trip	يذهب في رحلة مدرسية	give a surprise	يفاجئ
look forward to + ing	يتطلع الي	On a boat	علي قارب
Make a calligraphy book	يعد كتابا في فن الخط	Take long	يستغرق طويلا
Everything is ready	كل شيء جاهز	have a rest	ينال قسط من الراحة

Language Notes

feel – fail – fill – fall

- **Feel – felt - felt** يشعر
- **Fail - failed- failed** يفشل - يرسب
- **Fill – filled - filled** يملأ
- **Fall - fell - fallen** يقع

spend time

- **spend time + ing** الاسم / يقضي وقت في
- **spend time with +** شخص اسم

communicate with / communicate in

- **communicate with** يتواصل مع أشخاص
- **communicate in** + اللغة

stay in/at - stay with - stay for

- **stay in/at** يقيم في مكان
- **stay with** يقيم مع
- **stay for** يبقى لمدة

excited- exciting

- **Exciting** (صفه + ing) تستخدم لوصف مسبب الشعور
- **Excited** (صفه + ing) تستخدم لوصف الشعور الذي نشعره

Remember – Remind

- **Remember** يتذكر من تلقاء نفسه
- EX I remembered to buy sugar yesterday.
- **Remind** يذكر
- EX Remind me to buy sugar.

Alone – Lonely

- **Alone** بمفرده (لا أحد معه)
- **Lonely** (وحيد) يشعر بالوحدة

trip – voyage – flight

- **Trip** رحلة عمل رحلة قصيرة
- **Voyage** رحلة بحرية
- **Flight** رحلة جوية

get – get to – get on – get off

- **get** يحصل على
- **get to** يصل الى
- **get on** يركب
- **get off** ينزل

get ready to – get ready for

- **get ready to +** مصدر
- **get ready for +** اسم (v+ing) يستعد لـ

EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Doctors look patients at hospitals.
 a to b for c forward d after
2. If you are tired, a rest .
 a have b do c make d play
3. It's raining. Stay home.
 a in b on c at d with
4. sure that this medicine is safe .
 a Do b Make c Play d Have
5. Let's start , I'm getting everything
 a read b ready c busy d free
6. My nephew works in a centre of Vodafone. .
 a calls b calling c call d called
7. guard people and their possessions at night .
 a Shop workers b Police officers c Nurse d Engineers
8. My TV is broken. Can you it?
 a make b do c play d repair
9. I often my homework at night .
 a do b make c play d learn
10. My mother makes good food-she is a fantastic
 a cooker b cook c cooks d cooking
11. Maya and Hana are learning to swim the weekend .
 a on b at c in d of
12. My little brother is very He always wants to stay at home and watch TV! **WB**
 a excited b careful c lazy d hungry
13. We need a computer engineer to our computer because it doesn't work. **WB**
 a make b do c play d repair
14. The homework was very difficult, so I nervous.
 a failed b fell c felt d filled
15. I can't come to the park because I the house today. **WB**
 a clean b make c do d stay
16. My neighbour is a street food
 a sell b seller c teller d tailor

Final Revision

17. Why do you think it's a film ?
a boring b bored c bore d boredom
18. I'm feeling so I want to go somewhere .
a thirsty b hungry c bored d tired
19. My aunt is a nurse, she looks after a whole alone.
a war b word c ward d warm
20. What activities would you prefer to ?
a make b do c play d learn
21. I often communicate my relatives on happy occasions.
a at b in c on d with
22. What game is Omar on the computer ?
a doing b making c playing d waving
23. It's very hot outside. Stay home.
a in b on c at d with
24. like to visit Egypt in winter to enjoy the warm weather .
a People b Neighbours c Tourists d Patients
25. I'm looking forward to the Pyramids.
a visit b visiting c visited d visits
26. I'm that you can't come to my party.
a great b shame c sorry d worry
27. If you don't know the meaning of a word ,try to it.
a read b guess c miss d enjoy
28. There are so many shops to buy presents.
a amazed b amazing c excited d surprised
29. I you are enjoying your trip.
a tell b say c hope d wait
30. Dad, I want to on the school trip ,please.
a make b do c go d play
31. Don't worried during the exam, you should be relaxed
a make b get c let d try
32. Try to the bad things in your life.
a remember b remind c repair d forget
33. Teenagers need a lot of to feel happy .
a food b sleep c clothes d money

34. Try to sleep eight 10 hours a night .
 a at b on c to d with
35. It's difficult to friends in big cities .
 a do b make c lose d miss
36. Don't , I'm sure things will get better.
 a worry b go c wait d run
37. I haven't seen you for long. I really you.
 a lose b miss c want d need
38. You shouldn't leave a child in the house.
 a lonely b alone c along d alike
39. When he joined a new school, he friends with lots of students.
 a built b made c did d came
40. I'd like to a selfie in front of the river.
 a take b tap c do d make
41. One of the best to be happy to remember the good things in your life.
 a roads b ways c streets d paths
42. It is usually easy to with people in other countries if you speak English.
 a listen b communicate c shout d cry
43. The nurse works on the for children.
 a stadium b ward c playground d word
44. I have some good news for you. Guess ?
 a how b what c when d why
45. I'm really happy. I've my math exam .
 a failed b missed c lost d passed
46. Your father can his car on this road. It is very quiet.
 a bark b put c park d fly
47. Fatma is , so she can't hear you.
 a dear b deaf c blind d kind
48. Don't sit on the It's dirty .
 a blog b ground c soil d land
49. Please, sure that you write your emails carefully .
 a make b take c do d have
50. I'm very to everyone that helped me with my problems.
 a angry b grateful c ugly d nervous

Grammar in brief

Present continuous

المضارع المستمر

استخدامه

- المضارع المستمر يستخدمه لما نحب نتكلم عن
- 1- حدث يحدث الآن , زي مثلا أقول (احنا بنفترج علي التلفاز الآن)
- 2- حدث مؤقت , يعني مثلا أقول (الأسبوع ده بنجدد ف البيت)
- 3- ترتيبات مستقبلية (أنا مسافر الأسبوع الجاي يوم الاثنين , حجزت التذاكر)
- 4- عند وصف حدث في صورة. (يعني مثلا نقول أحمد بيلعب شطرنج في الصورة دي)

تكوينه

I- am
He / She / It / مفرد is
We / You / They / جمع are
+ ing فعل

EX look, He is sleeping.

هو نائم الآن

ملحوظة:

- إذا كان الفعل منتهى بـ e تحذف الـ e قبل إضافة ing مثل write → writing
- وإذا كان الفعل منتهى بـ ie تحول إلى y ثم نضيف ing مثل lie → lying
- وإذا كان الفعل منتهى بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة ing مثل swim → swimming - begin → beginning.

النفي (لا ..)

بنضع كلمة (not) بعد (am/is/are) ويبقى الفعل كما هو بـ (ing)

EX He isn't sleeping now.

كلماته الدالة

At the moment / اليوم / today / مازال / still / استمع / listen / انظر / look / الآن / Now / تلك اللحظة

at the present time / هذا اليوم / الأسبوع / الشهر / (day / week / month) / ف الوقت الحالي

EX Look, Ali is coming.

Listen, she's singing.

ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (always) مع المضارع المستمر بعد (am / is / are) لتدل علي الكثرة من حدوث الفعل. (علي بيتفرج ع التلفزيون كثير, لا ينبغي فعل هذا)

EX Ali is always watching TV. He shouldn't do that.

السؤال

1- السؤال بـ (هل ...) ؟

Is + he / she / it (مفرد) + فعل + ing?
Are + we / you / they (جمع) + فعل + ing ?

وده اجابته بتكون (yes / No) وتعكس (is/are) مع الفاعل
وانت بتعكس ان (Are you) بتتحول (I am) واننا بنضع (not) مع (No)

EX Are you coming today? هل ستاتي اليوم ؟

-Yes, I am.

-No, I'm not.

السؤال بـ (أداة استفهام ...) ؟

+ing? فعل + (مفرد) is + he / she / it
+ing? فعل + (جمع) are + we / you / they

EX What are you doing now?

I'm listening to my teacher now.

Adverbs

الظروف

الظرف كلمة تصف الفعل أو الصفة أو الظرف

طيب ايه الفرق ف الشكل ما بين (الصفة) و (الظرف) ؟؟

الظرف في الأصل عبارة عن

الصفة + **ly / ily**

ملحوظة : إذا انتهت الصفة بـ **(y)** قبلها حرف ساكن نحذف **(y)** ونضيف **(ily)**

Quick	سريع	Quickly	بسرعة
Slow	بطيء	Slowly	ببطء
Bad	سيء	Badly	بطريقة سيئة
Heavy	ثقل	Heavily	بشده
Easy	سهل	Easily	بسهولة
Happy	سعيد	Happily	بسعادة

□ يعني أقول

EX The car is **quick** (صفة)

EX The car runs **quickly** (ظرف)

ملحوظة: كمان خلي بالك منها : الصفات المنتهية بـ **(ic)** نضيف للصفة **(ally)**

Dramatic	درامي	Dramatically	بشكل درامي
Magic	سحري	Magically	بشكل رائع

□ ودي صفات شاذة

Good	جيد	Well	بطريقة جيدة
Late	متأخر	Late	إلى ساعة متأخرة
Early	مبكرا	Early	في وقت مبكر
Hard	جاد / صلب	hard	بجد
Straight	مستقيم	straight	بشكل مستقيم

EX The car is **fast** (صفة)

-The car runs **fast** (ظرف)

ملحوظة : كمان: فيه بعض الصفات التي تنتهي بـ **(ly)**

Lovely - silly - fatherly - motherly - lonely - friendly - brotherly

-و عشان نحولها ظرف هتبقى بالشكل ده:

in + a / an + الصفة + way

EX He is **friendly** with me.

EX He behaves **in a friendly way** with me.

EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- Omer sign language at school. SB
 a learns b learning c learn d is learning
- 2- Mr Mohamed in a lovely flat. SB
 a lives b living c live d is living
- 3- What Yara making for her uncle ? SB
 a do b does c is d are
- 4- I always milk for breakfast. SB
 a am drinking b drink c drinks d drinking
- 5- Ali a jacket today because it is very hot. WB
 a doesn't wear b isn't wearing c don't wear d not wear
- 6- My father in a bank in the city centre.
 a works b worked c am working d work
- 7- Khaled to work by train every day.
 a traveling b travels c is traveling d travel
- 8- I can't come to the phone now. I a shower.
 a am having b have c will have d am doing
- 9- We can't play tennis today because it
 a rains b rained c is raining d rain
- 10- What do you do after school? - I a nap.
 a usually took b took usually c take usually d usually take
- 11- My father me to school.
 a is sometimes taking b sometimes takes
 c sometimes take d taking
- 12- On Sundays, they volleyball in physical education class.
 a plays b play c will be played d are playing
- 13- Hany often go to school on foot, but today his father him to school.
 a drives b was driving c is driving d driving
- 14- sitting next to your best friend ? SB
 a You do b do You c Are you d You are
- 15- the students in your class working ? WB
 a Are b Have c Can d Do
- 16- She isn't at the hospital today.
 a work b working c works d worked
- 17- What doing at the moment ?
 a they are b are they c they were d were they
- 18- Birds always in the early morning.
 a singing b to sing c sings d sing
- 19- Roquia and Zeina always in the home.
 a help b helping c helps d to help

- 20- The police officer a school today. **WB**
 a visiting b visits c is visiting d visit
- 21- Ahmed in the shop, but his brother is ill so he is helping there today. **WB**
 a isn't usually working b not usually work
 c don't usually work d doesn't usually work
- 22- My friend sews **SB**
 a bad b worst c worse d badly
- 23- Mr Mohamed speaks English **SB**
 a well b good c best d better
- 24- The cat is sitting in the sun **SB**
 a laziest b lazier c lazy d lazily
- 25- The teacher treats all her children **SB**
 a kinder b kindest c kindly d kind
- 26- She is laughing in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. **SB**
 a carefully b slowly c loudly d hungrily
- 27- We're sitting on the rocks because they are sharps ! **SB**
 a carefully b loudly c excitedly d hungrily
- 28- It's at the end of the day and the guests are leaving.. **SB**
 a slowly b loudly c excitedly d hungrily
- 29- I'm sitting under the tree and eating my lunch. **SB**
 a badly b loudly c excitedly d hungrily
- 30- Radwa always paints
 a beautiful b happy c beautifully d good
- 31- The class listened to their teacher.
 a beautifully b quickly c easily d carefully
- 32- He climbed the hill He wasn't tired at all.
 a badly b friendly c hardly d easily
- 33- At the end of the school year, some students try to make up for the lost time.
 a hardship b hardly c hard d hardest
- 34- The driver of the school bus drives
 a carefully b careful c careless d slow
- 35- He arrived an hour but he caught the bus .
 a late b lately c fast d hard
- 36- That bird is flying very **WB**
 a careful b quick c loud d fast
- 37- The guests found their hotel after they bought a map of the city.
 a easy b easier c ease d easily
- 38- It is important to drive when it is raining. **WB**
 a carefully b quickly c loudly d carelessly
- 39- Our football team will win because they are playing very **WB**
 a well b quick c bad d good
- 40- Please, speak people at the back can't hear you.
 a politely b wisely c loudly d carelessly

➤ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the underlined word(s)

- 1) We(**is**) getting up early today to travel to Alex. (.....)
- 2) Look! He isn't (**studied**) Arabic (.....)
- 3) I (**drinks**) tea at the moment. (.....)
- 4) What are you (**does**) now? (.....)
- 5) Look! The birds (**flies**) high in the sky. (.....)
- 6) I am travelling to Cairo(**yesterday**). (.....)
- 7) Roquia is (**write**) an email at the moment. (.....)
- 8) My father is (**works**) on the farm now. (.....)
- 9) My mum(**makes**) lunch now. (.....)
- 10) There (**aren't**) a charger on the table. (.....)
- 11) She writes quick. (.....)
- 12) She is a well cook. (.....)
- 13) He drives dangerous. (.....)
- 14) She is a good singer. She sings good. (.....)
- 15) He is playing clever. (.....)
- 16) She is a quickly reader. (.....)
- 17) Ali speaks well English. (.....)
- 18) They spoke to us polite . (.....)

➤ Complete the dialogue:

Maha and Dina are making a salad.

- Maha** : Today, we are going to make a nice salad. The first thing that you have to
(1) is wash the tomatoes and cucumbers.
- Dina** : OK, I've done that. Do I cut the onions now?
- Maha** : Yes. (2), peel off the skin. After (3), cut the onions carefully.
- Dina** : OK. I've done that, too..
- Maha** : The next (4) is to cut the tomatoes and cucumbers.
- Dina** : That's easy

➤ Complete the dialogue:

- Ahmad** : Hello, Do you like your (1) ?
- Adam** : Yes, very much, and I like my teachers, too .
- Ahmad** : Where do you have your (2) lessons ?
- Adam** : In the laboratory. It's at the end of the (3)
- Ahmad** : Where (4) you talk to your friend ?
- Adam** : We talk at break in the playground.

Test based on unit 2

Listening

>1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1- What does this photo describe ?

a a playground

b a school

c a cinema

d a market

2- What can we see on the left?

a a woman

b a lady

c a nurse

d a man

3- What does the man sell in his shop ?

a fruit

b vegetables

c meat

d egg

4- What can we see on the right ?

a a woman

b two women

c two men

d a man

Language Functions

>2- Complete the following dialogue :

Sally : Hello, Manar. What are you doing?

Manar : I'm looking at my photo album.

Sally : Can I see your photos?

Manar : Sure. This a (1) of me and my friends.

Sally : It's beautiful.

Manar : It (2) when we were on the school trip.

Sally : Tell me about your friends.

Manar : In the (3) is my friend Mona. She was in front of us.

Sally : Who's the girl (4) the left?

Manar : She's Dalia. She's in the (5) T-shirt.

>-Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

A. **Gana** : ?

Khaled : I'm watching a film.

B. **Mohammed** : what are you doing Omar?

Omar :

Reading Comprehension

>3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

Omar decided that he wanted to be a doctor when he grows up He made his decision after seeing a television programme about a doctor who worked in China. So, Omar worked hard at school, passed all his exams and went to university to study to be a doctor.

He spent most of his time working, and had time to make many good friends. When he finished, he found a job as a doctor working in a village in northern India. He worked with a group of older doctors and a young doctor.

Most of the time, they worked in the small village hospital, but on two days a week they went to a nearby town and helped the Indian doctors who worked there. One day, when Omar was working in the larger hospital, a young man came in with a broken leg. He wasn't Indian. When the man saw Omar, he said, "Omar!

Do you remember me? We were in the same secondary school!"

☐ A) Answer the following questions:

1) When did Omar decide he wanted to be a doctor?

Final Revision

- 2) Where did the doctor on the television programme work?
- 3) What was wrong with the young man who came into the hospital?

☐ B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4) In which part of India was the village where Omar worked?
 a The capital. b The north. c The south. d The east.
- 5) Who did Omar work with at first in India?
 a Other doctors. b Some older and younger doctors,
 c Older doctors. d A group of friends.
- 6) How did the young man in hospital know Omar?
 a They were together in the same school. b Their parents were friends.
 c They played for the same football team. d They met at the airport

Vocabulary and Structure

>4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- 1- It's good to be sometimes.
 a lonely b alone c along d alike
- 2- How much meat do I need to buy for 15 dinner ?
 a blessing b guessing c guests d guess
- 3- It is not polite of her to laugh
 a loud b lazy c loudly d quiet
- 4- Policemen keep people at night .
 a safe b safely c safety d ill
- 5- new friends is something difficult .
 a Doing b Making c Building d Walking
- 6- That cat very now.
 a play b playing c plays d played
- 7- Don't your car here, it's a police station .
 a park b drive c repair d fly
- 8- is the person who can't hear people's voices .
 a lazy b polite c kink d deaf
- 9- My mother looks my young sister, she does everything for her.
 a at b for c after d forward to
- 10- They are listening to the teacher's explanation .
 a happy b sad c eagerly d eager

>5- Complete the sentences with the correct form:

- 1) He was singing happily at the moment. (.....)
- 2) You should speak polite to me. (.....)
- 3) Why do you driving so fast ? (.....)
- 4) I write an article at this moment. (.....)

Writing

>6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

" Your best friend "

Unit 3 in brief

Great jobs

important vocabulary			
agree	يوافق	infection	عدوى
bones	عظام	junior	فريق الكبار
brain	المخ	lungs	الرئتين
burn	يحرق	manager	مدير
championship	بطولة	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
charity	مؤسسة خيرية	nuclear	نووي
coach	مدرب	nursing	التمريض
competition	مسابقة	patron	راعي / ممول
countryside	الريف	princess	أميرة
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	proud	فخور
earthquake	زلزال	pump	بضخ
emergency	طوارئ	rubbish collectors	جامع القمامة
female	أنثى	scared	خائف
final	نهائي	scientist	عالم
great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر	senior	فريق الناشئين
handball	كرة اليد	street cleaners	عمال نظافة
heart	قلب	surgeon	جراح
hero	بطل	volunteer	متطوع
heroic	بطولي	win	يفوز

Prepositions and expressions

Try to	يحاول أن	In Africa	في أفريقيا
Some of	بعض من	Learn more about...	يتعلم أكثر عن..
Win.....against	يفوز بـ...ضد..	The first to ...	الاول في
Lose against	يخسر ضد	Be first in	يكون الاول في
Win by + v.+ing	يفوز بواسطة	Under 19 world cup	كاس العالم تحت 19
Proud of	فخور بـ	Get a prize	يحصل علي جائزة
Famous for	مشهور بـ	Get married	يتزوج
Feel pleased	يشعر بالسعادة	In the final	في النهائي
Reason for	سبب لـ.....	Look through	ينظر خلال

Language Notes

win / gain / earn

- **Win** يفوز
(a cup كأس / a medal ميدالية / a prize جائزة / a game مباراة / a race سباق / competition منافسة)
- **Gain** يكسب شيء معنوي
information معلومات / experience خبرة / fame شهرة
- **Earn** يكسب مالا يعيش منه
Money مال / نقود / his living قوت يومه

Like - alike - As

- **Like** مثل للتشبيه
- **Alike** متشابه / متساوي
- **As** مثل (وظيفة)

Too - either

- **Too** أيضا (تأتي آخر الجملة المثبتة)
- **Either** أيضا (تأتي آخر الجملة المنفية)

There - Their

- **There** هناك ✗ هنا
- **Their** ضمير ملكية (ملكهم)

EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

➤ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1- Zamalek won the against Al-Ahly.

a finally	b finish	c final	d end
-----------	----------	---------	-------
- 2- I feel very to meet you, Mr. Mohamed.

a pleased	b pleasure	c please	d pleasing
-----------	------------	----------	------------
- 3- Ahmed was a school project on his family.

a Working	b playing	c doing	d making
-----------	-----------	---------	----------
- 4- Roquia was a for the Red Crescent.

a voluntary	b volunteer	c tourist	d worker
-------------	-------------	-----------	----------
- 5- The Egyptian handball team won an important last year.

a competition	b completion	c information	d money
---------------	--------------	---------------	---------

- 6- A helps people who are poor, homeless or ill .
 a school b policeman c hospitals d charity
- 7- Omer is very of his father.
 a happy b poor c proud d pride
- 8- For older people we use “ ”
 a senior b junior c doctor d competitor
- 9- Mr. Mohamed works for no money to help people, he is a
 a charity b volunteer c worker d doctor
- 10- I prefer living in the to enjoy fresh air.
 a city b natural disaster c countryside d town
- 11- A: What is your of birth? -B: I was born on October, 17th .
 a place b date c nationality d address
- 12- Egypt is famous its nice weather.
 a with b to c by d for
- 13- Our national team deserves a respected foreign
 a coach b cushion c player d trainers
- 14- is a sport with seven players in a team, they throw the ball into a goal to win.
 a Football b Volleyball c Handball d Tennis
- 15- A is a terrible event such as an earthquake or floods.
 a emergency b natural disaster c charity d accident
- 16- A knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
 a sports coach b surgeon c police officer d hero
- 17- How many times our national football team won the African of nations
 a glass b cup c saucer d medal
- 18- Our Handball national team is one of the biggest teams in the
 a World b Africa c Asia d Europe
- 19- I'd like to write about my mother.
 a hero b heroic c heroin d heroine
- 20- My father is the of a big company.
 a manage b managing c managements d manager
- 21- You can give money to a to help poor people.
 a charity b charitable c chair d chart
- 22- Nour El Sherbini the World Squash Championship in 2020.
 a win b gained c won d gain

Final Revision

- 23-take air into the body.
a Heart **b** Lungs **c** Kidney **d** Liver
- 24- He is a,he protects people's lives and money.
a doctor **b** teacher **c** police officer **d** farmer
- 25- I don't think Ithe answer to this question.
a no **b** new **c** known **d** know
- 26- Dirty water from a river canyou if you drink it.
a infect **b** enjoy **c** clean **d** mend
- 27- I went to my uncle's house yesterday, but nobody was.....
a their **b** there **c** theirs **d** here
- 28- Zeina is good at English and she is good at maths.....
a neither **b** so **c** too **d** either
- 29- Street.....help to keep our cities clean.
a builders **b** makers **c** walkers **d** cleaners
- 30- I think rubbishcan be heroes.
a reviewers **b** managers **c** collectors **d** bakers
- 31- This nurse won a prize for herwork.
a silly **b** useless **c** heroic **d** ugly
- 32- The little girl is alwaysof dogs. She doesn't like them.
a scary **b** proud **c** scared **d** fond
- 33- I asked Ali about thefor his happiness.
a reason **b** season **c** cause **d** because
- 34- Good people workto achieve their goals.
a hardly **b** difficult **c** easily **d** hard
- 35- Children in Egyptschool at the age of four.
a start **b** walk **c** finish **d** play
- 36- Mr. Mohamed studied English at Cairo.....
a hospital **b** factory **c** University **d** museum
- 37- Mrs. Karima used to work as ain a big hospital.
a nurse **b** teacher **c** patient **d** professor
- 38- The heartblood around the body.
a pours **b** spills **c** bumps **d** pumps
- 39- Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote down their ideasof years ago.
a thousand **b** thousands **c** hundred **d** tens

Grammar in brief

Used to

المصدر + **used to** + فاعل

- ودي بنستخدمها لما نحب نتكلم عن عادة أو حدث كان موجوداً في الماضي وانتهى , زي مثلاً أقول :
(هو كان متعود يدخن) دي معناها انه خلاص بطل تدخين الحمد لله ..

EX He used to smoke. [**he doesn't smoke now**]EX We used to live in a small flat. [**now we live in a big flat**]

• ودي ببسلاويها فـ المعني

s + فعل () ⇒ لم يعد (مبقتش) **no longer** ⇒ فاعل مفردالمصدر ⇒ **no longer** + ⇒ I \ فاعل جمع

EX She used to sleep early.

-She no longer sleeps early.

مصدر + **habit to** (s اسم المالك) **It was my**

EX It was her habit to sleep early.

النفى

المصدر. **didn't + use to + inf.**

EX I didn't use to sleep late.

• ودي لو حبيت تعمل عليها سؤال بـ (هل ...) هتبقى بالشكل ده

هل كنت متعود علي ... ؟ ؟ مصدر **Did + use to + inf.** + فاعل• يبقى خلي بالك كده اننا في حالة السؤال والنفى بنرجع (**used to**) لأصلها (**use**)

EX Did you use to sleep early? -Yes, I did.

السؤال بأداة استفهام

مصدر ؟ **use to + inf.** + فاعل + **did** + أداة استفهام

EX How did you use to come to school when you were young?

ملحوظة مهمة

لما بيجبيلي جملة فيها عادة كانت في الماضي (**used to**) ويجي بعد كده يجبيلي (**but now**) فـ
الجملة اللي بعدها بتكون مضارع بسيط (مثبت أو منفي) عكس الجملة الأولى (وممكن نستخدم في
اخر الجملة المنفية **any longer**)

(**doesn't \ don't**) + فاعل + **but now** , المصدر + **used to** + فاعلEX She used to watch TV , but now she doesn't watch TV **any longer**.(مصدر \ s + فعل) + فاعل + **but now** , المصدر + **didn't use to** + فاعلEX She **didn't use to** sleep late , but now she **sleeps** late.

مكنتش متعوده تنام متأخر , بس دلوت بتنام متأخر .

EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I didn't her yesterday.

- a** see **b** saw **c** seeing **d** seen

2. How did you to the park?

- a** gone **b** go **c** went **d** going

3. They didn't their friends last month.

- a** met **b** meeting **c** meet **d** meets

4. Yara went last week.

- a** shop **b** shops **c** shopping **d** shopper

5. It used to be to send letters by pigeons .

- a** pop **b** not good **c** not nice **d** popular

6. My friend to swim fast.

- a** used **b** used to **c** didn't use to **d** use

7. I used to football when I was younger.

- a** playing **b** played **c** play **d** plays

8. He didn't smoke. Now , he does.

- a** used to **b** uses to **c** using **d** use to

9. Did you to annoy your friends at school?

- a** use **b** use to **c** using **d** used to

10. She used to long hair.

- a** have **b** having **c** has **d** had

11. He didn't to arrive late.

- a** used **b** use **c** uses **d** using

12. She is used to the poor.

- a** help **b** helps **c** helped **d** helping

13. What did he use to ?

- a** did **b** does **c** doing **d** do

14. A knife is used cutting meat.

- a** to **b** for **c** by **d** off

15. he use to watch TV? - Yes, he did.

- a** Was **b** Is **c** Does **d** Did

16. Ali used to clever when he was young.

- a** be **b** being **c** do **d** doing

17. He used to.....useful things when he was young.

- a** be **b** being **c** do **d** doing

18. I didn'tto live in such a big house.

- a** used **b** uses **c** using **d** use

19. Did he use toEnglish?

- a** study **b** studied **c** studying **d** studies

20. He used to smoke ,but now hesmoke.

- a** doesn't **b** don't **c** isn't **d** didn't

21. He used to be lazy , but now he.....

- a** is **b** isn't **c** don't **d** doesn't

22. Are your children used toa lot?

- a** walk **b** walks **c** walked **d** walking

23. She used to.....mistakes.

- a** make **b** makes **c** made **d** making

24. The camerato take photographs.

- a** is using **b** is used **c** uses **d** used

25. Whenyou go to bed last night?

- a** did **b** will **c** do **d** was

26. The secretarystay up late to finish her work .

- a** uses to **b** used to **c** is used to **d** is using to

27. I used to smoke but now I don't smoke any

- a** longer **b** most **c** long **d** longest

28. Radwa used to live in Cairo but shelives there.

- a** doesn't **b** no longer **c** any more **d** as long as

29. My friendto swim fast.

- a** used **b** used to **c** didn't use to **d** use

30. He didn't.....score goals. Now , he does.

- a** used to **b** uses to **c** using **d** use to

31. Did youto annoy your friends at school?

- a** use **b** use to **c** using **d** used to

32. We used to.....pigeons to send our letters.

- a** use **b** using **c** to use **d** not to use

➤ Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1. What(does) he use to eat?
2. She.....(uses) to cook well.
3. He used to be lazy, but now he.....(wasn't.)
4. The book is used.....(to) reading.
5. I used to..... (do) lazy.
6. He(use) to smoke badly.
7. They used to(playing) football.
8. He used to have long hair, but now he..... isn't.
9. She is used to.....(get)up early.
10. Did he.....(used) to study hard?

➤ Complete the dialogue:

A reporter makes a report about footballers.

Reporter : Hello (1)..... Is your name?

Footballer : Hamada shanah

Reporter : What did you (2)to do 20 years ago?

Footballer : I used to (3).....football .

Reporter : (4).....you earn much money from it?

Footballer : No, I didn't. we played because we loved playing for our country.

Reporter : I wish you more success.

footballer : (5).....

➤ Complete the dialogue:

Mazin : Hello, Hany.

Hany : Hello, Mazin.

Mazin : Did you (1).....to live in Cairo when you were young?

Hany : (2).....I used to live in Giza.

Mazin : Did you use to (3).....to school?

Hany : Yes. I used to go to school on foot.

Mazin : What hobby (4).....you use to do?

Hany : I used to read stories. What about you?

Mazin : I used to (5).....

Hany : Great

Test based on unit 3

Listening

➤ 1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1) We are proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub because he is

a great	b lazy	c funny	d old
---------	--------	---------	-------
- 2) He helps people by giving them new

a books	b hearts	c juice	d legs
---------	----------	---------	--------
- 3) In 2001, Dr Magdy

a died	b killed	c stopped working	d married
--------	----------	-------------------	-----------
- 4) Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in

a Cairo	b Aswan	c Giza	d Alex.
---------	---------	--------	---------

Language Functions

➤ 2- Complete the following dialogue :

- Ahmed : Where do you (1) ?
 Arwa : I live (2) Giza
 Ahmed : (3) do you come to school?
 Arwa : I come by bus.
 Ahmed : So, what do you (4) of your new school?
 Arwa : I think it's a good school.
 Ahmed : (5) you like your teachers there?
 Arwa : Yes, I like them very much

➤ -Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

- 1) Magda : Didn't you use to use the computer?
 Mum : No ,
- 2) A new student : ?
 A teacher : It is on the first floor
 A new student : Thank you for helping.

Reading Comprehension

➤ 3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

People used pigeons to communicate hundreds of years ago. However , tour guides in Colorado , USA, are using pigeons today ! The guides take photographs of the tourists who have travelled down an exciting river. They then use the pigeons to carry the cards from the camera 30 kilometers down the river to their office where they can print the photos. They used to take the cards from the camera by car, but this took a long time. The pigeons take just 20 minutes .After the tourists have travelled to the office , the photos are ready to see .

□ A- Answer the following question:

- 1) What do the pigeons carry ?

- 2) Why has this helped the tourists in Colorado?

- 3) Where is the office?

❑ B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4) In the past , they used to the cards back to the office.
 a drive b walk c ask the tourists to carry d not take
- 5) They print the photos in the.....
 a offices b shops c markets d clubs
- 6) The pigeons are than the cars
 a slow b slower c fast d faster

Vocabulary and Structure

>4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- 1- He used to up early, when he was young.
 a get b getting c gets d got
- 2- He is used to clever things.
 a be b being c do d doing
- 3- Mrs. Zeina used to work as a in an international school.
 a nurse b teacher c patient d professor
- 4- The heart blood around the body.
 a pours b spills c bumps d pumps
- 5- Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote down their thousands of years ago.
 a ideas b stories c patients d illness
- 6- I didn't to live in such a big house.
 a used b uses c using d use
- 7- Roquia was a for the Red Crescent.
 a voluntary b volunteer c tourist d worker
- 8- A always helps people when there is a disaster.
 a engineer b teacher c charity worker d actor
- 9- I used to smoke but now I don't smoke any
 a longer b most c long d longest
- 10- A/An does a job without being paid.
 a patient b engineer c volunteer d adult

>5-Complete the sentences with the correct form of the underlined word(s):

- 1) I'm very proud to my father. (.....)
- 2) Did he used to study hard? (.....)
- 3) Aya won a price for her school project. (.....)
- 4) He didn't used to come late (.....)
- 5) She is used to cook our lunch (.....)

Writing

>6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

(Rubbish collectors)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 4 in brief

Into the past

Important vocabulary

ancient	قديم	necklace	قلادة / عقد
arch	قنطرة	needle	مسلة
awesome	رائع	papyrus	ورق البردي
bowl	سلطانية	pharaoh	فرعون
castle	قلعة	pollution	تلوث
clay	صلصال	pot	أناء
coin	عملة معدنية	pyramid	هرم
damage	يضر	ring	خاتم
debate	جدال / مناقشة	ruins	بقايا
entrance	مدخل	stadium	ستاد
environment	البيئة	statue	تمثال
facts	حقائق	subheading	عنوان فرعي
figure	تمثال	temple	معبد
heading	عنوان رئيسي	theatre	مسرح
historic	تاريخي	tools	أدوات
local	محلي	tourists	السياح
mask	قناع	vase	فازة
mosque	مسجد	view	منظر طبيعي
museum	متحف	wood	خشب

Prepositions and expressions

necessary to.....	من الضروري ان	tell about	يتكلم عن
put ... in	يضع في / بداخل	protect from	يحمي من
interested in	مهتم ب....	get a guide	يتجول برفقة مرشد
Sitting on	يجلس على	Follow ... across	يتتبعه ... عبر
Behave well	يتصرف جيدا	Made of	مصنوع من (لم يتغير شكل المادة)
Pay for	يدفع ل...	Made from	مصنوع من (تغير شكل المادة)

Language Notes

Enjoy- Like -Love

➤ **enjoy – like – love + v.ing**

يحب (يحب فعل شئ عموما ك عادة)

➤ **enjoy – like – love + to+ مصدر**

يحب (يحب فعل شئ علي وجه الخصوص وليس دائما)

Too -Very

➤ **Too**

جدا (تفيد النفي وصعوبة اتمام الحدث)

➤ **Very**

جدا (تفيد صعوبة ولكن يمكن اتمام الحدث)

EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You must have a to get to enter the cinema.
 a book b booklet c ticket d note
- A is a structure with a curved top and straight sides
 a gun b arch c sword d knife
- It's to have a goal in your life.
 a necessary b unnecessary c hard d difficult
- This text is the Great Pyramid.
 a about b for c at d by
- A is A building in which Muslim worship.
 a Mosque b castle c museum d church
- I'm Interested reading novels.
 a in b for c at d by
- The teacher asked us to write a of our daily routine.
 a describe b inspire c description d prescribe
- We went on a school last Friday.
 a day b week c flight d trip
- A is a very large stone building built in the past , that was easily to defend against attack.
 a Mosque b castle c museum d hotel
- Zeina arrived school late.
 a in b for c at d by
- I think it isn't to lift this box. It's too heavy.
 a lazy b easy c hard d difficult
- A is building where important cultural historical objects are kept and shown
 a Mosque b castle c museum d hotel
- My sister likes visiting places.
 a historical b history c historian d historic
- I will ask the architect to design a nice in the entrance of my garden .
 a arch b archer c archaeology d art
- When I go to Cairo , I always admire visiting Salah al-Din 's and its towers .
 a temple b museum c castle d statue
- The grand Egyptian will attract a lot of tourists from all over the world
 a temple b museum c castle d statue

17. When I look out of my bedroom window, I have a beautiful.....
a allocation **b** sight **c** view **d** review
18. They didn't complete this building at all. These..... are thousands of years old.
a ruins **b** arches **c** entrances **d** castles
19. This old castle..... to the Romans times.
a gets **b** dates **c** goes **d** jumps
20. Many people used..... to help them paint around their eyes.
a cupboards **b** beds **c** TVs **d** mirrors
21. The paint helped to protect their eyes..... the sun and kept away insects.
a for **b** from **c** in **d** at
22. Money from tourism helps to pay..... local people to look after the stones.
a for **b** from **c** in **d** at
23. Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like.....
a sunset **b** sunrise **c** senet **d** senate
24. Tourists can visit stones, but they must not..... them.
a damage **b** imagine **c** protect **d** help
25. They tell us..... the people who made them and how they lived.
a for **b** from **c** about **d** at
26. people got into the bowl and used their..... to mix the ingredients.
a foot **b** feet **c** hands **d** legs
27. The Ancient Egyptians used..... and bowls for making food.
a pots **b** plates **c** dishes **d** cups
28. You..... look right and left before you cross the road.
a must **b** mustn't **c** don't have to **d** shouldn't
- 29..... from the past can help us to understand What life was like many years ago .
a Objects **b** Stones **c** Cups **d** Squares
30. Our national..... team achieved good results in the world cup .
a football **b** handball **c** volleyball **d** basketball
31. I am proud..... my father .He is my hero
a in **b** off **c** of **d** at
32. You should..... politely with your friends and with strangers.
a behave **b** behalf **c** behaviour **d** see
33. There are two-lion statue at the..... of Kasr Elnil bridge .
a enter **b** entering **c** entrance **d** enters
34. The police are working hard to remove the..... of the earthquake .
a ruins **b** rocks **c** rivers **d** stones

Final Revision

35. Tourists need a to give them information about the sites
a teacher **b** doctor **c** guide **d** nurse
36. The carpenter used many to repair the broken furniture .
a tools **b** towels **c** tart **d** fuel
37. There was a on TV about helping the environment.
a debate **b** date **c** carpet **d** lamp
38. is important for Egypt because it brings a lot of money and jobs.
a Infection **b** illness **c** Pollution **d** Tourism
39. Some people are careless as they rubbish in historic places.
a drop **b** make **c** lend **d** mix
40. Some people think that tourists can important places.
a attack **b** attract **c** damage **d** debate
41. A century is a period of years.
a 10 **b** 20 **c** 100 **d** 1000
42. My sister works in a big that organises holidays.
a fort **b** castle **c** palace **d** company
43. Muhammad Ali was the of Egypt in the past. He was the most important person.
a ruler **b** roller **c** baker **d** waiter
44. You forget to do your homework regularly.
a must to **b** must **c** mustn't to **d** mustn't
45. Muslims go to every day to pray .
a mosque **b** museum **c** castle **d** statue
46. Last winter we went to Luxor and visited its beautiful
a temples **b** houses **c** seas **d** roads
47. The trip was It was amazing.
a scary **b** pleased **c** awesome **d** boring
48. We call something is when it is very old.
a new **b** modern **c** patient **d** ancient
49. In the past, people built to watch their favourite sports.
a museums **b** mosques **c** stadiums **d** theatres
50. We bought a new house with a large
a entrance **b** wall **c** ruin **d** castle

Grammar in brief

The past simple الماضي البسيط

التكوين

فاعل + فعل + **d / ed / ied**

EX Ali played football.

علي لعب الكرة

ملاحظات

- جميع الافعال يضاف إليها (ed) ما عدا

1- الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (e) يضاف إليه (d)

2- الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (Y) قبلها حرف ساكن تقلب إلى (ied)

النفى

المصدر + **didn't** + الفاعل

EX Ali didn't play football.

(خلي بالك اننا حذفنا ed يعني الفعل بيرجع لأصله ف النفي)

السؤال

1- السؤال بـ (هل ... ؟)

Did + الفاعل + مصدر ؟

EX Did you watch the match?

هل شاهدت المباراة؟

-Yes, I did.

- No, I didn't.

2- السؤال بـ (أداة استفهام ... ؟)

did + مصدر + مفرد + أداة استفهام

EX When did you visit The Tower?

متي زرت البرج ؟

الكلمات الدالة

أي تاريخ قديم \ ف الماضي **in the past** / ذات مرة **once** / الماضي **last** / أمس **Yesterday**

خلي بالك

- الفعل (**were / was**) فعل ماضي بسيط من الأفعال الشاذة ◀ ◀

EX I **was** at the zoo yesterday.

- النفي بتاعه بيكون (**wasn't / weren't**)

EX I **wasn't** at the zoo yesterday.

- السؤال بنعكس وخلي بالك ان (**I was**) بتتحول في السؤال لـ (**Were you**) بمعنى (هل كنت..؟)

EX Were you at the zoo yesterday?

-Yes, I was.

- No, I wasn't.

Past continuous الماضي المستمر

• نيجي بقي للماضي المستمر ... يعني ايه ماضي مستمر ؟؟؟

- شوف الفرق بين الجملتين دول
1- انا لعبت امبارح .
2- انا كنت بلعب امبارح .

• ايه الفرق بين الجملتين ؟ ... بص ياسيدي وياستي بردوا ...

- الجملة الأولى بتقولك الحدث بصورة مباشرة , وده اللي هو الماضي البسيط ... زي ما تقول (انا أكلت - شربت - نمت ..)

- اما الجملة الثانية بتوصفك الحدث اللي كنت بتعمله وده بنسميه الماضي المستمر ...
(كنت باكل / كنت بشرب / كنت نايم ..)

• خلي بالك ان: الماضي المستمر ده مش بينفع مع كل الافعال , يعني فيه افعال لازم تيجي ماضي بسيط متنفّش تبقي مستمر لأنها بتتم علي مرة واحده , زي مثلا (يسجل هدف - يقع - يتعطل)

يعني مثلا مينفعش نقول (انا كنت بقع) انما نقول (انا وقعت)

حاجه كمان ان الماضي المستمر بنستخدمه لما نحدد الوقت بالظبط امتي يعني اقول (امبارح الساعة 7 كنت نايم)
يعني هو تعريفه انه (حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين من الماضي وانتهى) تعالى نشوف بيتعمل ازاى

I / He / She / It	المفرد	→	was	} + v.ing
We / You / They	الجمع	→	were	

EX I was playing at 7 p.m. yesterday

طيب لو عايزين ننفيه بنستخدم (not) بعد (was / were)

1- لو جاء الماضي المستمر مع الماضي البسيط ف كده بنتكلم علي حدث كان مستمرا (مستمر)

وحدث فعل آخر (بسيط) يعني حدث هذا الفعل اثناء حدوث الفعل المستمر , وقد يقطعه أو لا يقطعه

يعني مثلا (أثناء ما كنت بتفرج ع الفيلم , النور قطع) هنا فيه تعطيل , أو (أثناء ما كنت بتفرج علي الماتش , بابا وصل)

هنا مفيش تعطيل ولا حاجه , المهم لما حدث يحصل ويتم اثناء حدوث فعل آخر يبقي اللي كان شغال ده هيبقي (المستمر) واللي حصل اثناءه ده (البسيط) وهيجوا بالشكل ده .

ماضي بسيط + ماضي مستمر → أثناء While / As / Just as

EX While I was watching the film, the light went out.

طيب لو حبيننا نخلي الرابط في نص الجملتين , ف الجملة اللي بعد الرابط بتفضل بعده مباشرة و الثانية بتيجي قبله

ماضي مستمر ← while / as / just as → ماضي بسيط

EX The light went out while I was watching the film.

ماضي مستمر → لأن because ← ماضي بسيط

EX I didn't answer you because I was sleeping.

When عندما ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط

EX When the bell rang, I was sleeping.

ماضي بسيط ← **when** ← ماضي مستمر

EX I was sleeping **when** the bell rang.

2- في حالة حدثين كانا يحدثان في وقت واحد (لا يوجد اي تعطيل) يعني مثلا
(أثناء ما كنت بتفرج ع الفيلم, أختي كانت بتطبخ) هنا الاثنين شغالين ف وقت واحد

While / As / Just as أثناء ماضي مستمر + ماضي مستمر

EX While I was watching the film, she was cooking.

3- في حالة بقي حدثين حدثوا ورا بعض ع طول (يعني اقول لما الاستاذ دخل الفصل الطلبة وقفت)

ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط **When** عندما

EX When the teacher entered the class, the student stood up.

يبقي قبل ماتختار لازم تشوف الاحداث بتقطع بعضها ولا كانت ف وقت واحد ولا ورا بعض

ماضي بسيط + اسم ----- أثناء / خلال **During**

EX During the party, I met my friend Manal

EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Khaled to the museum last month.
a go b will go c goes d went
- When Omer's birthday?
a do b did c was d does
- Zeina TV an hour ago.
a watched b watch c are watching d will watch
- My friend Ali went yesterday.
a swim b swam c swims d swimming
- What did Omer when he arrived?
a did b doing c does d do
- How did Salwa when she saw the lion yesterday?
a feel b felt c feels d feeling
- Radwa wrote the e-mail
a now b last week c tomorrow d next

Final Revision

8. Roquia born in 2017.
 a was b are c did d do
9. When Ahmed was young, He always football.
 a play b plays c playing d played
10. you ready for the exam last week?
 a Did b Were c Do d Are
11. How did you go to school? - I by car.
 a go b going c will go d went
12. No, Abeer didn't Aswan last year.
 a visit b visited c go d went
13. When did you have your last math lesson? - We it at 2 o'clock.
 a had b have c will have d has
14. The ship sank because there a terrible storm.
 a are b is c was d were
15. How your weekend?
 a did b does c was d do
16. Salah El- Din Al- Ayouby the citadel to protect Cairo.
 a build b is building c built d has built
17. Yesterday, I my homework with my sister.
 a did b do c done d doing
18. When did you your friends ?
 a see b saw c seeing d seen
19. Did you watch the film last night ? No , I
 a don't b did c didn't d watch
20. What time you play computer games last night ?
 a did b was c does d do
21. When I was younger, I to live with my grandma.
 a going b go c gone d went
22. They attend the conference last month.
 a won't b didn't c wasn't d don't
23. Once , there a bridge here , Gezira Bridge.
 a was b is c were d are
24. Building the citadel began in 1176 and in 1184.
 a finish b finished c finishing d finishes

25. We had lunch at the restaurant and the food delicious.
 a is b are c were d was
26. Omar was playing basketball when he his knee.
 a hurting b hurt c was hurting d is hurting
27. My mobile rang while I my homework.
 a do b does c did d was doing
28. He was driving to work when the accident.....
 a will happen b happened c happens d happen
29. While my homework, I slept.
 a was doing b were doing c did d doing
30. What were you yesterday morning?
 a do b did c doing d was doing
31. Were you sleeping when the clock off?
 a go b goes c going d went
32. Was it when you left school?
 a rain b rains c rained d raining
33. My friends to cinema last Sunday to watch a nice movie.
 a go b went c going d was go
34. Last night, I in my room when my mother opened the door.
 a sleep b sleeping c was sleeping d slept
35. What when the accident happened?
 a were you doing b you were doing c did you doing d you did doing
36. I down the street when the car suddenly crashed against the tree.
 a walked b was walking c walking d walk
37. I my lunch when the phone rang.
 a have eaten b was eating c has eaten d ate
38. What when you heard the explosion ?
 a were they doing b are they doing c did they use to do d did they do
39. As I for tomorrow's trip, I fell down and hurt my leg.
 a prepare b prepared c was preparing d preparing
40. I and my friends didn't play because it.....
 a rained b was raining c rains d raining
41. While she was studying, her brother TV.
 a watched b was watching c watch d watches

Final Revision

42. Yara wasn't eating when her father

- a** call **b** calls **c** calling **d** called

43. he arrived, they were having lunch.

- a** While **b** When **c** During **d** On

44. When she visited her uncle, he was

- a** swim **b** swam **c** swims **d** swimming

45. As he was carrying the vase, he it on the floor.

- a** drops **b** was dropping **c** had dropped **d** dropped

46. My sister the room while I was making tea.

- a** cleaned **b** was cleaning **c** is cleaning **d** cleans

47. my holiday, I visited many places .

- a** When **b** While **c** During **d** Where

48. Last summer holiday, my friends and I many Moroccan cities.

- a** visit **b** visiting **c** was visited **d** visited

49. Yesterday, I television while my father was reading a book.

- a** was watching **b** watched **c** watch **d** watches

➤ **Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:**

1. While he (took) a bath, his friend arrived. (.....)
2. While he was sleeping, his sister (watch) TV. (.....)
3. My mobile (ring) while I was doing my homework. (.....)
4. He was walking when he (see) the accident. (.....)
5. While was sleeping, I had a bad dream. (.....)
6. Where were you (have) lunch? (.....)
7. (While) the match, Ronaldo scored a goal. (.....)
8. When he was young, he sometimes (watches) TV. (.....)
9. Where did they (lived)? (.....)
10. He didn't (helped) me with my homework. (.....)
11. He (born) in 2010. Now he is ten years old. (.....)
12. We (visit) the museum 4 weeks ago. (.....)
13. I (have) breakfast with them 15 minutes ago. (.....)

➤ Complete the dialogue:**Sarah is asking Roquia about the time she is going shopping.**

Sarah : When are you going shopping, Roquia ?

Roquia : I am (1) shopping next Sunday.

Sarah : (2) will you go with?

Roquia : My mum, Mona.

Sarah : (3) do you usually go shopping ?

Roquia : (4) taxi.

Salma meets Amal, a new girl in the class.

Salma : Hello, Amal! How can I (1) you ?

Amal : May you give me a (2) of our school ?

Salma : With pleasure.

Amal : How (3) will it take to know our class?

Salma : Only five minutes. It is at the (4) of the first floor.

Amal : Thanks.

Ahmed and Ola are talking about exams.

Ahmed : Are you (1) for today's exams?

Ola : Yes, I am (2) about you ?

Ahmed : Of course I revised all the units.

Ola : Really! What about the (3) ?

Ahmed : The Reader ? I did, too. It's a very interesting story.

Ola : I hope we will (4) in the English exam.

Test based on unit 4

Listening

>1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1) How was Ali's holiday?

a bad

b sad

c great

d boring

2) Where did Ali go on holiday?

a Italy

b France

c Iraq

d Jordan

3) How did he travel?

a on a snowmobile

b by plane

c by ship

d on foot

4) Where did he stay?

a in a flat

b in an attic

c in a house

d on a ship

Language Functions

>2- Complete the following dialogue :

Ali meets a tourist and asks him some questions.

Ali : Hello, I'm pleased to meet you.

Tourist : I'm pleased to meet you, too.

Ali : Where do you (1) from ?

Tourist : I come from England.

Ali : It is your first visit to Egypt.

Tourist : (2) I visited Egypt two years ago.

Ali : (3) are you going to stay here ?

Tourist : Two weeks.

Ali : Which places are you going to visit ?

Tourist : (4) at Giza and the Valley of the Kings in Luxor.

>Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

A. Teacher : Who built the Citadel in Cairo ?

Mona :

Teacher : He is a great leader.

B. Esraa : ?

Nora: King Ptolemy built it in about 283 BCE.

Esraa: I hope I will visit it soon .

Reading Comprehension

>3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

At school we learn many subject . My favourite school subject is English . We learn it to be able to speak to tourists who come to Egypt . We also learn it to read English books and magazines . Most names of machines and medicines are written in English We also learn history and geography to know something about the world around us we learn Arabic to know our language very well .

□ **A- Answer the following question.**

1) Can you read names of medicines ? why ?

2) What's your favourite subject ?

3) Is learning English able us to speak to tourists ?

□ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 4) We learn because it's our first language .
 a English b geography c Arabic d history
- 5) At school we learn many subjects .
 a bad b useful c horrible d short
- 6) Most names of machines and medicines are written in
 a English b Arabic c French d Spanish

Vocabulary and Structure

➤ 4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- 1) If you a building, you go into it.
 a damage b enter c leave d walk
- 2) People usually build around gardens or between the rooms of a building.
 a statues b stairs c walls d corridors
- 3) A is a person who goes to many places.
 a tablet b truck c tower d traveller
- 4) There's a beautiful from the top of the mountain.
 a review b view c preview d interview
- 5) I didn't to the museum last week .
 a go b went c gone d going
- 6) My sister me a nice jacket yesterday .
 a buys b bought c buy d buying
- 7) King Fuad built Muntazah
 a please b Place c plus d Palace
- 8) I'm so sorry to you, but did King Abbas build it ?
 a inter b interrupt c entertainment d internet
- 9) Building the citadel began in 1176 and in 1184.
 a finish b finished c finishing d finishes
- 10) We had lunch at the restaurant and the food delicious.
 a is b are c were d was

➤ 5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the underlined word(s):

- 1) Last night , I have a very good night's sleep. (.....)
- 2) When you coming I was having a shower. (.....)
- 3) In the evenings, I like to go out and walk on the platform. (.....)
- 4) Thousand of towers comes to Egypt every year. (.....)

Writing

➤ 6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

(What you must and mustn't do)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 5 in brief

Helping you, helping me

Important vocabulary

apartment / flat	شقة	donation	تبرع
share	يشارك	princess	اميرة
blog	مدونة الكترونية	stranger	غريب
advertisement	اعلان	generous	كريم
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	disabled	معاق
lift	مصعد / يرفع	random	عشوائي
laboratory	معمل	volunteer	متطوع
behave	يتصرف	fantastic	رائع
tidy	يرتب	helpful	متعاون
smile	يبتسم	polite	مؤنب
messy	فوضى	lucky	محظوظ
tips	نصائح	seat	مقعد ثابت
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	produce	ينتج
sailor	بحار	kindness	طيبة - عطف
businesswoman	سيدة اعمال	perhaps	ربما
head teacher	ناظر	community	مجتمع
servant	خادم	stairs	سلالم
thief	لص	donate	يتبرع
beggar	شحات	trainer	مدرب

Prepositions and expressions

put away	يضع شيء في مكانة	give away	يتبرع
wash up	يغسل الاطباق	look for	يبحث عن
cruel to	قاسي مع	surprised about	مندهش بشأن
get up	يستيقظ	kind to	طيب مع
for no reason	بلا سبب / بدون سبب	make the bed	يرتب السرير
look after babies	يعتني بالأطفال	do kind things	يفعل أشياء طيبة
take out the rubbish	يخرج الزباله	care about	يعتني ب.....
stay in bed	يبقى في الفراش	tidy up	يرتب المنزل
pick up	يلتقط / يقطف	try to	يحاول أن

Language Notes

Special - Private

- Special
- Private

خاص / مميز
خاص (شخصي الاستخدام)

EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. My sister alwayscooking to help my mother .
☐ a makes ☐ b does ☐ c takes ☐ d gives
2. You shouldn't..... .The baby is asleep .
☐ a shout ☐ b shouts ☐ c shouted ☐ d shouting
3. My mother always asks me to.....my room when it is dirty.
☐ a neat ☐ b tidy ☐ c miss ☐ d messy
4. Disabled and old people can't use the stairs .they uses the.....
☐ a left ☐ b lift ☐ c leaves ☐ d let
5. Luckily, there is only oneleft on that flight .
☐ a chair ☐ b seat ☐ c sofa ☐ d bed
6. We should alwaysmoney to charities to help the poor .
☐ a lend ☐ b borrow ☐ c donate ☐ d withdraw
7. We should lookthe birds and animals that we keep.
☐ a after ☐ b for ☐ c to ☐ d up
8. The computer gave us anumber or unexpected one .
☐ a planned ☐ b systematic ☐ c random ☐ d usual
9. Omer always cleans beaches and picksrubbish .
☐ a out ☐ b up ☐ c for ☐ d with
10. My neighbour is.....so he always uses a wheelchair .
☐ a able ☐ b sound ☐ c healthy ☐ d disabled
11. This baby is hungry, you musthim .
☐ a feed ☐ b eat ☐ c carry ☐ d wash
12. I love football. It's mysport .
☐ a favour ☐ b ugly ☐ c rude ☐ d favourite
13. People should wait to taketo get on the metro.
☐ a turns ☐ b off ☐ c up ☐ d in
14. A woman looksher baby, he is lost .
☐ a for ☐ b after ☐ c forward ☐ d at
15. My brother always puts his clothes..... He is well-organized.
☐ a away ☐ b in ☐ c up ☐ d down

16. If the bin is full , take the rubbish.....

- a** in **b** on **c** out **d** off

17. The girl is very sad because she has lost herof money.

- a** vase **b** bucket **c** pocket **d** purse

18. He is a cheerful person .He alwaysat other people.

- a** frowns **b** smiles **c** cries **d** insults

19. Today, you have to do theafter lunch .

- a** washing up **b** wash up **c** clean **d** tidy up

20. My daughter is shy in front of

- a** friends **b** brothers **c** sisters **d** strangers

21. The rich should be kindthe poor .

- a** at **b** to **c** for **d** with

22. Roquia is always making ain the kitchen- she is a messy girl .

- a** tidy **b** honest **c** mess **d** kind

23. Don't let the bins be....., please take out the rubbish .

- a** empty **b** free **c** fill **d** full

24. My father worksa teacher .

- a** like **b** such as **c** for example **d** as

25. Take theit's faster than using the stairs .

- a** left **b** leaves **c** lift **d** leaf

26.always ask people for money .

- a** Tourists **b** Bakers **c** Masters **d** Beggars

27. When does this book come.....?

- a** on **b** off **c** out **d** into

28. Be kind and politeothers .

- a** on **b** to **c** at **d** with

29. Our mother ordered us to.....well .

- a** make **b** do **c** behave **d** play

30. We buy bread at the.....

- a** grocer's **b** greengrocer's **c** butcher's **d** baker's

31. I amat your bad behaviour .

- a** surprised **b** surprising **c** exciting **d** amazing

32. Charities use the money to helpPeople .

- a** rich **b** healthy **c** wealthy **d** poor

33. Our class decided toone act of kindness every day.
a make **b** do **c** play **d** give
34. Omera bedroom with his brother .
a share **b** sell **c** divide **d** build
35. I usually ask my sister to tidyour room before going to bed .
a on **b** up **c** for **d** at
36. We've got science in the
a library **b** restaurant **c** cafe **d** laboratory
37. I go to the cinemaa month .
a twice **b** one **c** three **d** two
38. I'm sorry to hear that my friend wasafter the accident.
a able **b** unable **c** disabled **d** disability
39. In my opinion, doing random acts of kindness is.....
a ugly **b** bad **c** rude **d** fantastic
40. I'm I want to wear something heavy .
a hungry **b** cold **c** hot **d** thirsty
41. Wemoney to charities .
a lend **b** borrow **c** make **d** donate
42. Theis the king's daughter .
a miss **b** princess **c** queen **d** madam
43.my way home, I met an old friend .
a In **b** On **c** At **d** With
44. How often were you asked for money from street?
a beggars **b** men **c** women **d** children
45. I'mI'm looking for something to eat
a angry **b** hungry **c** thirsty **d** cold
46. This old man is kind. He gave me a big
a smell **b** smiled **c** smelled **d** smile
47. the.....means people who live in a certain area in a city or a town.
a country **b** community **c** distance **d** village
48. We shouldn't beto the weak or disabled
a kind **b** polite **c** cruel **d** tidy
49. Abeer is a teenager ,she can'tsuch an important decision.
a do **b** fake **c** make **d** take

Grammar in brief

The Relative Clauses ضمائر الوصل

Who

فعل + فاعل/ فعل + **Who** + عاقل (فاعل - مفعول)

الذي / التي للعاقل

EX The boy **who** is playing, is my brother.

which

فعل + فاعل/ فعل + **which** + غير عاقل

الذي / التي / اللذين لغير للعاقل

EX She bought a dress ,**which** doesn't fit her

- ينفع نستخدم (that) بدلاً من (who / which) يعني للعاقل وغير العاقل بس مش بيحي قبلها فواصل

EX The tree **that** he cut was young .

Whose

تحل محل ضمائر الملكية أو ('s) الملكية

اسم مملوك + **Whose** + اسم مالك (عاقل / غير عاقل)

اللي للملكية

EX I saw the man **whose** car was broke down.

Where

حيث للمكان (لا يأتي معها حرف جر نهائياً لا قبلها ولا بعدها) **where** + اسم مكان

EX This is the house **where** I live.

خلي بالك مش اي اسم انت عارف انه اسم مكان , يكون جاي اسم مكان ممكن يكون غير عاقل فقط زي مثلاً

-This is **our house**. My father bought **it** last year.

هنا المنزل اللي ابويا اشتراه السنه اللي فاتت, ف المنزل هنا جاي غير عاقل بس مش مكان , ف بنستخدم معاه (which) فقط

-This is our house **which** my father bought last year.

الخلاصة : اذا كانت الجملة بعد ضمير الوصل تصف ما يحدث في المكان فهو اسم مكان وفي نفس الوقت غير عاقل زي مثلاً (المصنع حيث يعمل ابي..) اما اذا كانت الجملة تصف المكان فقط ف هو غير عاقل (المصنع الذي تم بناءه عام 2000)

When

عندما للزمان (لا يأتي معها حرف جر نهائياً لا قبلها ولا بعدها) **when** + اسم زمان

EX Friday is the day **when** we don't go to school.

ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (which) مع اسم المكان والزمان ولكن يأتي معها حرف جر, وخلي بالك كمان ان حرف الجر لازم يتناسب مع الفعل أو الاسم الموجود في الجملة.

EX Friday is the day **on which** we don't go to school.

Grammar in brief

Expressing obligation and Advice

التعبير عن الإلزام والنصيحة

(يجب أن) المصدر + **must** + فاعل

EX I must invite my friends.

□ وفي حالة النفي بنستخدم (**mustn't**) بمعنى (ممنوع / لا يجب أن) وإلا سيكون فيه نتائج سلبية

EX You mustn't park here as it's a " No parking area"

□ وفي حالة السؤال بتيجي بالشكل ده

هل يجب أن ... ؟ ؟ مصدر + فاعل + **Must**

EX Must I do homework tonight?

نيجي ل ثاني حاجه ممكن نستخدمها وهي (has to – have to)

□ ودي بنستخدمها مع الشئ المضطرين لعمله غصب عنا . (مفروض عليك من الخارج) وبتيجي بالشكل ده

(يجب أن) المصدر + **has to** + فاعل مفرد

(يجب أن) المصدر + **have to** + I / فاعل جمع

EX You have to show your identity when you come.

(من الضروري أن) مصدر + **has to / have to = It's necessary to**

EX It's necessary to study hard for your exams.

□ وفي حالة عدم الضرورة (النفي) نستخدم

مفرد ➔ **doesn't have to**

جمع / I ➔ **don't have to**

It's not necessary

□ مش ضروري (يعني ممكن أعمله وممكن لا ..) بدون أي ضرر

EX You don't have to buy a new pen. I have an extra one.

EX It's not necessary to buy a new pen. I have an extra one.

□ وفي حالة السؤال بتيجي بالشكل ده

هل يجب أن ... ؟ ؟ مصدر + **have to** + فاعل + **Does / Do**

مصدر + **Is it necessary to**

EX Do I have to have a car license ?

Yes, you do.

□ وفي حالة النصيحة نستخدم

(ينبغي أن) المصدر + **should** + فاعل (ف الغالب) **(You)**

EX You should study hard.

طبعاً الفرق بين الإلزام والنصيحة مش كبير ولكن النصيحة ليس فيها إجبار علي الإطلاق

النفي

المصدر + **shouldn't** + فاعل

EX You shouldn't watch too much T.V.

EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- E-mails.....advertise things are called spam.
 a who b where c which d whose
- 2- This is the flat.....they live.
 a where b which c whose d whom
- 3- This is the flat.....they bought.
 a where b which c whose d whom
- 4- He gave me all the money.....he had.
 a where b which c whose d that
- 5- Cairo is the city in.....he lives.
 a where b whom c who d which
- 6- Mr. Mohamed Omar,lives next door, is an English teacher.
 a that b who c whose d where
- 7- We did an experiment.....went wrong.
 a who b which c whom d whose
- 8- The scientist.....discovered the Femto Second was Dr Zewail.
 a who b which c when d where
- 9- The film.....I saw last night was great.
 a that b who c whose d where
- 10- He is the best footballer.....I have ever seen.
 a that b who c whose d where
- 11- The woman,is talking to the man, is the manager.
 a which b whose c who d when
- 12- She is the girl.....father is a doctor.
 a which b whose c who d when
- 13- We went to Cairo.....we visited my granddad.
 a who b whose c where d which
- 14- Is there a time.....we can talk about this?
 a whose b where c who d when
- 15- A person.....doesn't have a mobile is hard to contact.
 a who b whose c when d which
- 16- My neighbour.....is a teacher, sometimes helps me with my English.
 a whose b who c which d where

- 17- The museum,is near our school, is always busy in the afternoon.
a whose **b** who **c** which **d** where
- 18- Luxor,thousands of tourists stay every year, is near the Nile
a whose **b** who **c** which **d** where
- 19- My brother,muscles are very strong, carried the heavy bags.
a whose **b** who **c** which **d** where
- 20- The professor,works at the university, knows everything about maths.
a whose **b** who **c** which **d** where
- 21- English.....all students study at school is a very important subject.
a whose **b** who **c** which **d** where
- 22- Ali went to school in his village,his father made equipment for horses.
a whose **b** who **c** that **d** where
- 23- Ahmed,father is ill, is really sad.
a whose **b** who **c** which **d** that
- 24- Mr Mohamed Abd El-Tawab,is a kind manager, is respected by all.
a whose **b** who **c** which **d** that
- 25- There is also a stadium.....you can watch horse riding.
a who **b** which **c** where **d** that
- 26- I.....wear glasses because I can't see very well.
a mustn't **b** don't have to **c** have to **d** shouldn't
- 27- Good students.....to take private lessons.
a won't **b** haven't **c** shouldn't **d** don't have
- 28-Zeina have to get up early?
a Are **b** Is **c** Do **d** Does
- 29- My fatherget up at six o'clock every day to go to work . **SB**
a don't have to **b** have to **c** doesn't have to **d** has to
- 30- When you get on the bus, youbuy a ticket. **SB**
a have to **b** doesn't have to **c** don't have to **d** has to
- 31- At the weekends, Iget up early. I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. **SB**
a doesn't have to **b** has to **c** don't have to **d** have to
- 32- Everyonedo a random act of kindness sometimes. **WB**
a should **b** shouldn't **c** have to **d** has to
- 33- Youpass your exams to go to university. **WB**
a doesn't have to **b** don't have to **c** have to **d** should

- 34- Youdo your homework at the same time every day. **WB**
 a shouldn't b don't have to c have to d has to
- 35- Youshow your passport when you leave the country . **WB**
 a have to b has to c shouldn't d needn't
- 36- Youlook right and left before you cross the road.
 a must b mustn't c don't have to d shouldn't
- 37- At school, you.....listen to your teacher.
 a have b must c mustn't d has to
- 38- This is a valuable book. you.....keep it and mustn't lose it.
 a must b mustn't c shouldn't d haven't
- 39- We.....cook more, there's enough food.
 a have to b don't have to c has to d should
- 40- I don't like that uniform, but I.....wear it at work.
 a don't have to b shouldn't c have to d mustn't
- 41- She's always tired. She.....go to bed late every night.
 a shouldn't b should c don't have to d have to
- 42- You.....remember to close the windows when you leave the house.
 a mustn't b don't have to c should d has to
- 43- You.....eat fast food every day. It's very bad for you.
 a must b have to c don't have to d shouldn't
- 44- Youdrink water from the river. It's not clean.
 a doesn't have to b have to c has to d mustn't
- 45- We.....do the housework. Our mother is ill.
 a must b mustn't c shouldn't d have
- 46- This was a nice evening. We must.....again.
 a meet b meeting c met d to meet
- 47- You.....brush your teeth three times a day. It's good for your teeth.
 a have to b don't have to c mustn't d must
- 48- You.....forget to do your homework regularly.
 a must to b must c mustn't to d mustn't
- 49- You.....be kind to your friends.
 a mustn't b must c must never d shouldn't
- 50- It's late. You.....never make so much noise.
 a mustn't b must c shouldn't d don't

➤ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the underlined word(s):

1. At our school we haven't to wear a uniform. (.....)
2. You mustn't study hard if you want to pass your exams. (.....)
3. Does the boys have to get up early? (.....)
4. You doesn't have to shout. I can hear you. (.....)
5. We have leave now or we'll miss the plane. (.....)
6. You haven't to go to school today. It's Friday. (.....)
7. You mustn't using a mobile phone in class. (.....)
8. Students and teachers must are polite to each other. (.....)
9. I don't know what I shouldn't do with my old clothes. (.....)
10. Have you to wear special clothes for your sports class? (.....)
11. 2018 was the year where Roquia was born. (.....)
12. We won the match whose we played yesterday. (.....)
13. Have you seen the man who hair is brown? (.....)
14. He is the tallest boy who I have ever met. (.....)
15. What do you think of the film who we saw yesterday? (.....)
16. Giza is the city in where we stay. (.....)
17. This is the house where he sold. (.....)

➤ Complete the dialogue:

Radwa : Yara, what do you think we should do?

Yara : I don't know. (1) watch TV.

Radwa : That's a (2) idea. We're going shopping later, so I think you should rest for a while.

Yara : I don't think I want to go anywhere.

Radwa : What do you (3) ? I thought you said we were going shopping.

Yara : I know, but I changed my mind. I'm too tired.

Radwa : Well, when (4) you think we'll go?

Yara : Maybe tonight.

Radwa : OK, (5) I use your phone?

Yara : Certainly. Here you are.

Ali and Omer are discussing about the next weekend

Ali : (1) do you think we should go next weekend ?

Omer : (2) going to the cinema ?

Ali : I don't like watching films outside home.

Omer : We (3) play football

Ali : I can't because my foot hurts.

Omer : What do you think we (4) do

Ali : Why (5) we go to the beach.

Omer : That's a good idea.

Test based on unit 5

Listening

>1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

- 1- What kind of person are the writer and her sister ?

a polite	b rude	c ugly	d messy
-----------------	---------------	---------------	----------------
- 2- What do they usually do before sleeping?

a clap	b sing	c dance	d tidy up
---------------	---------------	----------------	------------------
- 3- How many times do they take out rubbish?

a once	b twice	c three times	d four times
---------------	----------------	----------------------	---------------------
- 4- Where do they take out rubbish ? in

a baskets	b pots	c bags	d bins
------------------	---------------	---------------	---------------

Language Functions

>2- Complete the following dialogue :

- Maha** : Where did you go last Friday ?
Fatma : I didn't (1)
Maha : Why did you stay at home ?
Fatma : I was helping (2)
Maha : What did you (3) ?
Fatma : I washed all my (4)
Maha : What did you do at night ?
Fatma : I watched (5)

>Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

- A) **Habiba** : Is there any water in that bottle?
Mother :
 B) **Dina** : ?
Ramzy : I'd like falafel.

Reading Comprehension

>3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

Football is the most popular game in the world . Football was played in England for many years , but there were no rules . In 1863, the first rules for football were written to make the game safer . The most famous player in history is Pele . He is a Brazilian player .When he was a boy , he used to play for hours in the street with his friends . When he was 17 , he played for his country in the world cup . In 1961, he scored one of the best goals.

☐ A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why were rules written for football ?

- 2- When did Pele play for his country

- 3- What is Pele's nationality?

☐ B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- The first rules for football were written in

a 1961	b 1798	c 1967	d 1863
---------------	---------------	---------------	---------------

- 5- Pele was a player .
 a lazy b bad c clever d well
- 6- is the most popular game in the world .
 a Football b Basketball c Volleyball d Handball

Vocabulary and Structure

>4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- 1- Our bedroom is always untidy because we are
 a kind b polite c cruel d messy
- 2- The museum is free. You pay to get in .
 a have to b don't have to c doesn't have to d has to
- 3- The lighthouse had mirrors reflected the light from oil lamps .
 a who b where c which d when
- 4- My parents always money to charities which help disabled people .
 a borrow b steal c lend d donate
- 5- Do you know the name of the man wrote Hamlet ?
 a which b who c that d where
- 6- Please, put all your clothes in the usual place .
 a away b up c out d on
- 7- It's important for us to help people in our
 a common b community c comma d companion
- 8- Who you breakfast every morning ?
 a does b gives c makes d plays
- 9- Famous people should work a charity .
 a on b out c in d for
- 10- Beggars usually ask people for to buy their needs.
 a advice b money c bread d food

>5-Complete the sentences with the correct form:

- 1- Last year, I went to Paris which I stayed for a weak. (.....)
- 2- The policeman which I spoke to was very polite. (.....)
- 3- That is the hotel where we used to stay at every summer. (.....)
- 4- Mary walks as if she were a prince . (.....)

Writing

>6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

(A sport you really like)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 6 in brief

Different environments

Important vocabulary

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	bar chart	رسم بياني شريطي
canal	قناة	cause	يسبب
drought	جفاف	changing world	العالم المتغير
electric	كهربائي	climate change	تغيرات المناخ
environment	البيئة	electricity	الكهرباء
wood	خشب/غلة	green energy	طاقة نظيفة
mountain	جبل	remind	يذكر
report	تقرير	pray	يصلي
rubbish	قمامة	title	لقب
black honey	عسل اسود	east	الشرق
cotton	قطن	west	الغرب
delicious	لذيذ	north	الشمال
introduce	يقدم	south	الجنوب
locate	يحدد موقع	damage	يتلف
monuments	أثار	podcast	بث اذاعي
mosque	مسجد	collect	يجمع
diagram	شكل توضيحي - رسم بياني	city centre	وسط المدينة
burn	يحرق	event	حدث
reuse	يعيد استخدام	line graph	رسم بياني خطي
solution	حل	melt	ينوب
solve	يحل	presentation	مقدمه
vote	يصوت	recycle	يعيد تدوير
coloured	ملون	serious	خطير - جاد
weather	طقس	temperature	درجة الحرارة
warm	دافئ	position	وضع

Prepositions and expressions

Famous for / known for	مشهور ب	Protect from	يحمي من
Stop damaging	يتوقف عن اتلاف	Give suggestions	يعطي اقتراحات
Be located	يقع جغرافيا	Make suggestions	يكون اقتراحات
Careful about	حريص بشأن	Make mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء
Pay for	يدفع	Make notes	يدون ملاحظات
Catch fish	يصطاد سمك	Make suggestion	يكون اقتراح
Connected to the internet	متصل بالانترنت	Along the river	علي امتداد النهر
For fun	للمتعة	Do / cause damage	يسبب تلف
Run on.....	يعمل باستخدام	Cause fires	يسبب حرائق

Language Notes

Electric – Electricity – Electrician

- Electric كهربائي (صفة)
- Electricity الكهرباء
- Electrician عامل الكهرباء

Climate – Weather

- Climate المناخ (كيفية "تصرف" الغلاف الجوي على مدى فترات زمنية طويلة نسبيًا (سنوات أو حتى مئات السنين))
- Weather الطقس (ظروف الغلاف الجوي على مدى فترة زمنية قصيرة (ساعة أو يوم أو أسبوع))

Canal – Channel

- Canal قناة مائية
- Channel قناة تليفزيونية

Position -Location

- Position وضع / مكانة / موضع مناسب
- Location موقع / مكان / مكان تصوير

Diving - Scuba diving

- Diving الغطس
- Scuba diving الغطس بجهاز تنفس

EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

b Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1- This key is one of many historical in the museum.
 a objects b ovens c pavement d site
- 2- visit historical places and stay in hotels.
 a Tourists b Farmers c teachers d doctors
- 3- Please me to visit my aunt tomorrow.
 a remember b remind c reuse d recycle
- 4- Who will you for in the next election ?
 a shout b vote c remind d tell
- 5- A is usually historical and quiet.
 a bus b tourist c museum d rainforest
- 6- is the forest with tall trees which grow in rainy area
 a Rainforest b Rainstorm c Rainwater d Raincoat
- 7- The place has no water, it's
 a wet b cold c dry d damp
- 8- I think of materials benefit the environment.
 a recycling b cycling c recycled d cycled

Final Revision

- 9- If you want to laugh a lot , come with me to the show.
 a sad b funny c bad d boring
- 10- Planes always runs petrol.
 a by b for c to d on
- 11- In summer , I like to go to the beach to fish .
 a hunt b shoot c make d catch
- 12- Is your computer to the internet?
 a contacted b caught c connected d made
- 13- The stole the lady's purse and ran away .
 a thief b safe c save d theft
- 14- The big shark the diver and he was badly injured.
 a attacked b like c loved d played
- 15- The Panda is so we should help it live.
 a danger b dangerous c endangered d serious
- 16- He made a terrible mistake . As a / an he is punished.
 a prize b result c reward d award
- 17- Can you us a reasonable suggestion about our holiday?
 a do b take c make d give
- 18- You can vote in elections , if you are an/ a
 a infant b child c kid d adult
- 19- You need to buy a drink from that machine.
 a coins b jars c cans d bottles
- 20- Some cars are run on natural
 a fruit b vegetables c gas d petrol
- 21- A long time ago, people used gold for money.
 a walls b rivers c museums d coins
- 22- If you leave in the sun , it melts.
 a bread b ice c glass d tea
- 23- Museums contain a lot of
 a temples b statues c deserts d vans
- 24- He played handball fun.
 a to b at c by d for
- 25- I like t-shirts made of because they are soft .
 a cotton b wood c metal d cattle
- 26- Adults are the people who are able to and choose the person they want.
 a vote b sound c avoid d voice
- 27- My class decided that we could bottles to recycle them.
 a drop b throw c attract d collect
- 28- Climate change is a problem that we should care about.
 a community b national c local d global
- 29- Rubbish in the river the wildlife.
 a stores b damages c protects d produces
- 30- When there is too much smoke coming out from factories, it air pollution.
 a causes b stops c protects d saves

- 31- The price of the room in this hotel is 500 pounds a night..... breakfast .
 a introducing b paying c including d producing
- 32- Most big shops and supermarkets are found in the city.....
 a corner b centre c border d wall
- 33- Throwing rubbish in water will lead to.....fish
 a damage b damaging c damaged d damages
- 34- The Nile used to.....every year before the High Dam.
 a flood b feed c rain d finish
- 35- We suffered from.....because of lack of rain three years ago.
 a drought b dry c rain d flood
- 36- My mother puts a bin behind the kitchen door to putin it .
 a food b fish c water d rubbish
- 37- His bodyis high . He needs cold compresses.
 a temperature b blood c lung d heart
- 38- Where is Port Saidon the map ? -It is on the coast .
 a lied b lay c located d calculated
- 39- He prefers walkingthe bank of the River Nile .
 a long b belong c tall d along
- 40-is used for making bread .
 a Cotton b Silk c Wheat d Sugar
- 41- Egypt is known.....its wonderful monuments
 a of b for c by d at
- 42- There is a lot of.....on tops of mountains .
 a salt b sugar c snow d fruit
- 43- All of us should protect our monuments.....being robbed .
 a of b from c about d at
- 44- Egypt is full of places which are consideredreserve
 a nature b land c soil d tree
- 45- We should stop tourists from damaging the.....reefs.
 a floral b collar c coral d plural
- 46- I go to my teacher to help me.....my problem .
 a solve b solving c solved d solves
- 47- Tell the children to be carefulknives and scissors .
 a with b of c about d to
- 48- My father aims toa new house.
 a build b building c builds d built
- 49- High temperature will lead to.....ice on mountains
 a melting b solving c smelting d smuggling
- 50- Tourists go to Hurghada to enjoy.....in the Red Sea.
 a scuba diving b diver c dove d running

Grammar in brief

Adjectives الصفات

- قسمنا الصفات دي بقي لـ أربع درجات

1- Positive degree

1- الدرجة الإيجابية

وهي الصفة عندما تصف اسم واحد فقط [مفرد/ جمع]. وتأتي الصفة بدون أي إضافة

EX Ali and Mohamed are **tall**.

- هنا مش بقارن بينهم ولكن بقول ان الاثنين طوال ، ولا كمان بسلاويهم ببعض ولكن هما الاثنين طوال

2-Comparative degree

2- درجة المقارنة

هيقابلك نوعين من الصفات (صفة قصيرة ، يعني بننطقها مرة واحدة من مقطع واحد زي كلمة (short) والنوع الثاني الصفة الطويلة اللي بننطقها أكثر من مقطع زي كلمة (dangerous) وهنتعامل بالشكل ده

+ er + than [الصفة قصيرة - من مقطع واحد]

EX Ali is **shorter than** Mohamed.

+ than [الصفة الطويلة بدون إضافة] **more / less**

EX The lion is **more dangerous than** the monkey.

♦ خلي بالك في حالة السؤال مش بنستخدم (**than**) بمعنى (أيهما ؟)

EX Which one is taller, Ali or Ahmed?

3- Superlative degree

3- درجة التفضيل

وهي الصفة عندما تفضل اسم على الجميع (يعني واحد أفضل من الجميع في صفة معينة سواء صفة سلبية أو ايجابية)

the + est [الصفة القصيرة]

EX The cheetah is the **fastest** animal.

the most / the least [الصفة الطويلة بدون إضافة]

EX The lion is the **most dangerous** animal.

ملحوظات هامة :

nice ➔ nicer / nicest

◀◀◀◀

الصفة التي تنتهي بـ (e) يضاف إليها [r / st]

happy ➔ happier / happiest

◀◀◀◀

والصفة التي تنتهي بـ (y) تحول إلى [ier / iest]

4- Equal degree

4- درجة التساوي

وهي الصفة عندما تساوي بين اسمين (يعني الاثنين زي بعض)

as + as [الصفة بدون إضافة]

EX Ahmed is **as tall as** Ali.

not as / so + as [الصفة] وعند النفي تستخدم

EX Ahmed isn't **as / so tall as** Ali.

هيقابلك بعض الصفات الشاذة لازم تبقى عارف شكلها

Irregular adjectives

إيجابية	المقارنة	التفضيل
Good	Better than	The best
Little	Less than	The least
Much/many/a lot of	More than	The most
Far	Farther/further than	The farthest/the furthest

Grammar in brief

Passive voice

المبني للمجهول

◆ مضارع بسيط معلوم

يعبر عن عادة أو حقيقة (حدث يتكرر) وبيجي مع المواعيد الثابتة والوظائف الثابتة.

التكوين	النفي	الكلمات الدالة
s + فعل ➔ فاعل مفرد مصدر ➔ فاعل جمع - I	مصدر + doesn't مصدر + don't	غالبا often - عادة usually - دائما Always كل every - ابدا never - أحيانا sometimes
EX Ali plays football		

◆ مضارع بسيط مجهول

am/ is/ are + p.p. + مفعول

EX Football is played

◆ السؤال

معلوم ؟ مصدر + فاعل + **Does / Do**
مجهول ؟ **P.P + مفعول + Am - Is - Are**

◆ ملاحظات

جميع الأفعال يضاف لها [s] ما عدا: - الفعل الذي آخره [y] قبلها ساكن تقلب إلى [ies]
- الفعل الذي آخره [sh / ch / o / s / x / z] يضاف إليه [es].
- تستخدم كلمات المضارع البسيط قبل الفعل أو بعد (V. to be)

طبيب ازاي هنعرف انه عايز يحول الجملة للمجهول ؟

□ هتلاقي بين قوسين المفعول أو (v. to be) أو التصريف التالت أو المفعول

- We make **books** of paper. (are made)
- **Books** are made of paper.

خلي بالك بقي ن الجملة لو منفية بـ (doesn't / don't) فطبعا بنحذفها وننفي الجملة ف المجهول
بـ (isn't / aren't)

-She **doesn't** do the homework. (The homework)

EX The homework **isn't** done.

- يمكن إستخدام (الفاعل + by) في آخر جملة المبني للمجهول إذا كان يضيف معلومه جديده للجملة.

Ahmed watches T.V. (by)

EX T.V. is watched **by** Ahmed.

EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

➤ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1- Arabic.....in Egypt.
 a is speaking b speaks c is spoken d speak
- 2- Clouds areby the wind.
 a blown b blow c blows d blowing
- 3- Footballeverywhere.
 a play b plays c is playing d is played
- 4- A lot of comic booksevery year.
 a is produced b produced c are produced d produce
- 5- It.....that money brings happiness.
 a say b are said c is said d said
- 6- Rubbishevery day.
 a is collected b collect c are collected d collected
- 7- Computers.....everywhere.
 a used b is used c are use d are used
- 8- Inter-city trains.....by men.
 a are driven usually b is usually driven c are usually driven d drive
- 9- Alexandriain the north of Egypt.
 a located b is locating c is located d locates SB
- 10- The farmers around heremany vegetables.
 a growing b are grown c grow d is growing SB
- 11- The museumby lots of people every year.
 a is visiting b are visited c visits d is visited SB
- 12- The city isfor its beautiful buildings.
 a is known b knows c is knowing d knew SB
- 13- Lots of cottonin the area.
 a are grown b is grown c grew d grows SB
- 14- Many fishin the sea near Port Said.
 a caught b is caught c are caught d catch SB
- 15- Special foodsat the festival.
 a eat b is eaten c are eaten d eating
- 16- When is the room?
 a decorate b decorates c decorated d decorating

- 17- cars made in Japan now ?
a Are **b** Were **c** Was **d** Were
- 18- A million babies every year.
a are born **b** were born **c** is born **d** born
- 19- Hundreds of eggs in a big pan.
a cook **b** are cooked **c** are cooking **d** cooks
- 20- Fish in special freezers.
a is kept **b** is keeping **c** keeps **d** keep
- 21- Bad habits by good students.
a avoid **b** are avoiding **c** are avoided **d** avoiding
- 22- My lessons are usually before exams.
a revising **b** revised **c** revise **d** revises
- 23- When is Sham El-Nessirn in Egypt?
a celebrated **b** celebrate **c** celebrates **d** celebrating
- 24- How are cakes ?
a made **b** make **c** makes **d** making
- 25- People are than snakes.
a big **b** bigger **c** as big **d** biggest
- 26- This book isn't as interesting that one.
a as **b** so **c** than **d** then
- 27- A bike is expensive than a scooter.
a most **b** many **c** less **d** least
- 28- English is the language.
a easy **b** easier **c** easiest **d** as easy
- 29- Have you ever seen a snake than this one?
a big **b** biggest **c** as bigger **d** bigger
- 30- Who is Ali or Mohamed?
a tall **b** taller **c** tallest **d** most tall
- 31- She cooks as as her sister.
a clever **b** cleverly **c** cleverest **d** cleverer
- 32- Everest is than Kilimanjaro.
a higher **b** highest **c** high **d** as high
- 33- Physics is difficult than history.
a most **b** more **c** as **d** the

Final Revision

- 34- Gold isexpensive than silver.
a more **b** most **c** less **d** least
- 35- Aswan is.....than Cairo.
a far **b** farther **c** farthest **d** furthest
- 36- She sings asas her friend.
a good **b** bad **c** well **d** best
- 37- He is.....than Ali.
a good **b** bad **c** best **d** worse
- 38- London is one of the.....cities in the world.
a large **b** larger **c** as large **d** largest
- 39- The more you study, the.....marks you get.
a high **b** higher **c** highest **d** lowest
- 40- There areEnglish cars than Korea ·
a least **b** fewer **c** the fewest **d** the least
- 41- This bottle has theorange juice in it.
a least **b** fewest **c** fewer **d** less
- 42- The old library has books than the modern library.
a least **b** less **c** few **d** fewer
- 43- We should spendtime watching TV.
a fewer **b** few **c** a **d** little
- 44- Students usually havesleep on the bus.
a little **b** few **c** less **d** fewer
- 45- My brother is not active; he spendshours studying than I do.
a fewer **b** less **c** many **d** more
- 46-students in our school have visited England.
a Little **b** Less **c** The least **d** Few
- 47- I bought thejuice bottles.
a least **b** fewest **c** few **d** less
- 48- Summer is the driest season because it hasrain.
a the least **b** the fewest **c** the most **d** the more
- 49- I havetime to read this year because I have more schoolwork.
a little **b** few **c** fewer **d** less

➤ Complete the sentences with the correct form of word(s) in brackets:

1. What is petrol.....(**make**)from?
2. When.....(**does**) the shop opened?
3. We(**are watched**) films every Friday.
4. Sugar cane (**grow**) in Minya.
5. Lunch is always (**cooking**) by my mother.
6. Cotton..... (**used to**) make clothes.
7. Radwa is the (**thin**) girl in the school.
8. This café is the (**worse**) in the city.
9. Bikes are..... (**not expensive**) as planes.
10. My house is (**as small**) yours.
11. He runs as..... (**quick**) as his father.
12. The film is..... (**most**) interesting than the novel.
13. The play was(**most**) more interesting than the film.
14. He is the..... (**better**) student .
15. She is not as tall.....(**so**) her brother.

b Complete the following dialogue:

Mohamed : Where do you live?

Omer : I (1) in Tanta.

Mohamed : Where is Tanta located?

Omer : It's (2) in the north of Egypt.

Mohamed : What is it known for?

Omer : It's known for its (3) sweets.

Mohamed : How can I go there?

Omer : You can go there by bus or by (4)

Mohamed : Tanta is a very beautiful city.

Omer : (5), it is.

FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF

Roquia : The problem is that we all use too much water.

Zeina : I (1) We should do something about that.

Roquia : Certainly. We could use less water.

Zeina : That's (2) So, how can we use less water?

Roquia : Well, (3) don't we try recycling water?

Zeina : Sorry, I don't know what you mean.

Roquia : We could use water twice.

Zeina : (4) could we do that?

Roquia : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.

Zeina : That's an interesting (5)!The plants would like that.

Test based on unit 6

Listening

>1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1) What does Roquia like?

a Chocolate

b Crisps

c Pizza

d Meat

2) How old is Omer?

a Ten

b Seven

c Six

d Nine

3) Does Zeina like healthy snacks?

a Yes, she doesn't

b - No, she doesn't

c Yes, she does.

d No, she does

4) Omer eats and peppers.

a crisps

b carrots

c chocolate

d pizza

Language Functions

>2- Complete the following dialogue :

Jane : Do you have mountains (1) in Egypt ?

Nada : Yes , we have mountains on the Red (2)

Jane : Do they have snow on their (3) ?

Nada : Yes . they have and they can be melt because of (4) change

Jane : It will (5) dangerous if all the snow melts

Nada : I agree with you

>Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

A) Amr : What's your favourite TV programme?

Maha :

Amr : I watch it, too.

B) Manar : ?

Marwa: The match starts at ten o'clock.

Reading Comprehension

>3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

A brave 13-year-old boy, Karim, has got a medal for rescuing a four-year-old child from a swimming pool. The child was playing next to the water when suddenly he fell in. He couldn't swim. The child was in the pool for about a minute when Karim saw him. Karim jumped into the water and rescued the child. The child was not hurt. His parents were very pleased to see him! They have invited Karim and his parents to visit them at their home.

□ **A- Answer the following question.**

1) How old is Karim?

2) Why did he get a medal?

3) How long was the child in the pool?

❑ B- Choose the correct answer

4) Karim into the water and rescued the child.

- a climbed b rescued c jumped d ate

5) The underlined word ' His ' refers to

- a Karim' parents b Karim c the boy's parents d the boy

6) Karim' parents were very to see him!

- a sad b pleased c bad d angry

Vocabulary and Structure

>4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1- When is Sham el-Nessim in Egypt .

- a celebrate b celebrated c celebrates d celebrating

2- The parade watched by thousands of people every year.

- a is b was c are d were

3- Silver is not expensive as gold.

- a than b so c to d for

4- He speaks English than he writes it .

- a worst b fewest c fewer d worse

5- The Pacific Ocean is the of all oceans .

- a big b as big c bigger d biggest

6- Tourists come from all over the world to see our

- a monuments b TV c matches d pots

7- Heavy rain causes rivers to

- a rain b dry c flood d blood

8- helps to protect the environment.

- a Recycling b Rubbish c Bins d Petrol

9- I will buy an car .

- a electricity b electric c electrical d mechanic

10- We should stop tourists damaging the environment.

- a from b at c about d to

>5-Complete the sentences with the correct form:

- 1) Mai is most beautiful than Dalia. (.....)
 2) Climate change will lead to local warming . (.....)
 3) Recycling paper is cheaper than any other paper . (.....)
 4) Many plants are growing in Egypt. (.....)

Writing

>6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Floods

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

How to write a paragraph

كتابة موضوع التعبير

لما تيجي تكتب بر اجراف , في بعض النقاط اللي لازم تراعيها

- 1- العنوان : وده بيكون في وسط السطر
- 2- اترك مسافة صغيرة عند بداية أي فقرة جديدة
- 3- مراعاة علامات الترقيم , ودي هتخلي شكل البراجراف قوي وبيؤدي المعني المقصود.
- 4- مراعاة عدد الجمل بحيث يكون بر اجراف متكامل وغير ناقص عن المطلوب.
- 5- مراعاة الزمن وفي الغالب بيكون جميع جمل البراجراف في زمن واحد.
- 6- أن تكون كل جملة ذات تركيب بنائي صحيح , وطبعا احنا عرفنا الازمنة بشكل كويس وازاي نكون جملة سليمة , وان كل جملة في البراجراف لازم تحتوي علي فاعل وفعل وتعالى نفكر ك بشكل الجمل في الازمنة المختلفة

مضارع بسيط	مصدر \ s + فعل > ----- فاعل	عادة - حقيقة - مواعيد ثابتة-وظائف ثابتة
مضارع مستمر	am \ is \ are + > ----- فاعل v.ing	حدث يحدث الآن
مضارع تام	has \ have + > ----- فاعل p.p	حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر ع الحاضر
مضارع تام مستمر	has \ have + > ----- فاعل been+ v.ing	حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمر في الحاضر
ماضي بسيط	التصريف الثاني > ----- فاعل	حدث تم وانتهى أثره
ماضي مستمر	was \ were + > ----- فاعل v.ing	يصف حدث كان يحدث في وقت معين وانتهى اثره
ماضي تام	had + > ----- فاعل p.p	حدث تم وانتهى قبل حدث آخر في الماضي
مستقبل بسيط	will + > ----- فاعل مصدر	حدث سوف يحدث في المستقبل
استطاعة مضارع	can + > ----- فاعل مصدر	امكانية فعل شئ في المضارع \ المستقبل
استطاعة ماضي	could + > ----- فاعل مصدر	قدرة في الماضي علي فعل شئ
الزام	must + > ----- فاعل مصدر	الزام ووجوب
نصيحة	should + > ----- فاعل مصدر	نصيحة بفعل شئ
احتمال	may + > ----- فاعل مصدر	احتمالية حدوث شئ

وكمان دي جمل ممكن تستعين بيها

There is no doubt that is very important.

لا شك أنمهم جدا

We all agree thatis very important in our life nowadays.

نتفق جميعا أن مهم جدا في حياتنا اليوم.

No one can deny that..... has an important role / bad effect in our life.

لا أحد ينكر أنله تأثير علي حياتنا.

To sum up, one can say that is really.....

باختصار, نستطيع أن نقولهو حقا.....

Finally, it is quite clear that..... Is really....صفة.....

ف النهاية , من الواضح أنيعتبر.....

Recommended Paragraphs

Daily routine

My name's Huda. I live in the second floor of the new block of flats with my dad, mother, grandma and two brothers. I always get up at 6 o'clock on a school day. My mother always makes my breakfast. I walk to school with my two brothers. My father goes to work at 7:30 am. He works in a school. Sometimes I walk to school with my father. I never go to school late. We usually have lunch at five together. In the evenings, I do my homework. I often play chess with my grandma before I go to bed. I study hard for my exams. I often listen to music. We often go to the park at the weekends. I like to play on the grass there.

My bedroom

I live in a flat with my family. It has got two bedrooms, a dining room, a kitchen and a living room and a bathroom. It's in a big city. Our flat is very comfortable. My bedroom has a big window with curtains. When I open the curtains, the room is very bright with sunlight. My bed is under the window. I have a wardrobe in front of the bed. I put my clothes there. There is a mirror next to the wardrobe. There's also a lamp next to the bed. The bathroom is next to my bedroom. It's big. It has a nice basin there. In the evenings, I like to read in bed or watch TV. Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open.

"My penfriend

Today , I'm going to talk about my penfriend. I have a penfriend from England His name is John. He is thirteen years old. He is very nice and friendly. He tells me about his daily routine. His daily routine is the same as mine. He gets up at 6:30 every morning. His school starts very early so he goes to school without having breakfast with his family. He has his breakfast at school in " breakfast break". His favourite subjects are maths and science. Kevin will visit Egypt for the first time on the next summer holiday. I hope to see him soon.

A job you like

There are many interesting jobs. I think the doctor's job is the most important one. He or she helps us get better after being sick. I look forward to becoming a doctor one day to look after the sick and to try to find out the reason for that. He always looks after ill people and tries to find out why they are ill or what hurts them. If a doctor understands their illness, he gives them the right medicines to feel better. A good doctor usually makes sure that all people feel healthy. The nurse's job is as important as she helps doctors and patients. They are truly angels. We have to work hard to have the jobs of our dreams.

What makes a hero

A hero is someone who can show courage when they face a problem.

A hero is a person who is able to help the others in many ways. A person can become a hero by saving someone who is in danger. Another example of a hero is someone who is there to help others to go on through difficulties of life. A hero can be someone who gives up their life so that others could live. A hero does not always have to show courage, he can be afraid, but still be a hero through his other actions. A hero can be a teacher. He can teach you to read or write and that will make a big difference in your life. That is a hero to me, someone who makes a difference in a person's life.

Someone I'm proud of

Of all the members in my family, my mother is the person I am proud of. She is 40 years. She looks much younger than her age with short hair and a beautiful face. She works hard. At work, she is respected by all of her friends. She is a useful person in society. My mother always does the housework well. She is a very good cook. I really admire her for her wonderful dishes. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. I always love her and I will always be proud of her.

How life used to be different in ancient Egypt

Life in Ancient Egypt was different to today. Poor children didn't use to go to school. Children from rich families used to start school when they were about seven. Children used to enjoy playing games. When older parents died, they used to leave their houses to the sons. The Ancient Egyptians used to leave jewellery and furniture inside their houses to the daughters. They lived around the Nile River where they could grow crops. They built pyramids. You can still see these pyramids today. They knew a lot about maths, medicine and farming.

A historic place you visited

I visited one of the greatest historic places in India, the Taj Mahal in Agra. I went there with my mum and dad. It is very huge in size. I studied about the Taj Mahal at school, I also saw its pictures. But watching it with my eyes was like a dream that came true. It was built by Shah Jahan around 1630s. He built it as a gift to his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. This history made it more interesting. It took around 22 years to build. People think that Shah Jahan cut off the hands of the workers who built it so that no similar building could be built. Therefore, this is one of the most awesome historic places.

Making questions تكوين السؤال

تكوين السؤال ده هتحتاجه جدا في المحادثات في تعالي نتعرف فيه علي كل نقطة

الزمن	الاستخدام	المساعد	الاساسي
Present simple مضارع بسيط	عاده او حقيقه	does/do	مصدر
Present con. مضارع مستمر	حدث يحدث الان	is/are	+ ing فعل
Past simple ماضي بسيط	حدث تم وانتهى اثره	did	مصدر
Past con. ماضي مستمر	حدث كان مستمر وانتهى	was/were	+ ing فعل
Present perfect مضارع تام	حدث تم وانتهى وله اثر	has/have	تصريف ثالث
Past perfect ماضي تام	حدث تم قبل آخر الماضي	had	تصريف ثالث
Future simple مستقبل بسيط	حدث سوف يحدث	will	مصدر

عند عمل سؤال لابد من تحديد زمن السؤال اللي هتسأله . فمثلا اذا كنت عايز تسأل وتقول (أين أنت ذاهب الان ؟) يبقى ده مضارع مستمر ... الخ وهناك نوعين من الاسئله

النوع الأول:-

ب- (هل ؟) ؟ الفعل الاساسي + فاعل + مساعد

يعني لو عايز تقول (هل ستلعب ؟) ده يبقى سؤال في المستقبل ويكون كالتالي Will you play?

-النوع الثاني:-

ب- (أداة استفهام ... ؟) ؟ الفعل الاساسي + فاعل + مساعد + أداة استفهام

لو عايز تسأل (أين أنت ذاهب الان ؟) يبقى كده ده سؤال في المضارع المستمر

Where are you going?

لاحظ أن الفاعل يتغير حسب سؤالك عما يفعل الفعل (I-he-she-it-we-you-they)

دي أكثر أدوات الاستفهام استخداما

What	ماذا	Where	اين	Whose	لمن
When	متى	Who	من للعاقل	Why	لماذا
How	كيف	How much	كم للكمية	How much	كم سعر
How many	كم عدد	How often	كم مرة	How long	كم المدة

ملاحظات هامة:

اذا كان المطلوب سؤال ولكن لا توجد علامة استفهام نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

1- Tell me + الفعل + الفاعل + الاستفهام كلمة +

2- Tell me if / whether + الفعل + الفاعل +

هناك أسئلة مختصرة في المحادثة تشذ عن القاعدة العامة لتكوين السؤال عليك حفظها :

Single or double?	سرير أم اثنين؟	With or without a bath?	بحمام أم بدون؟
Where from?	من أين أنت؟	First or second class?	درجة أولى ولا ثانية؟
Single or return?	ذهاب أم عودة؟	What else?	وماذا أيضا؟
Single or married?	أعزب أم متزوج؟	And you?	وماذا عنك أنت؟
Where to?	أين أنت ذاهب؟	What about you?	وماذا عنك أنت؟
Why ?	لماذا؟	Why not?	لماذا لا؟

2- Complete the following dialogue:

1-Basma : Hello, Sara. How are you?

Sara : Fine, Basma.

Basma : (1)..... do you go to school, Sara?

Sara : I always (2)..... to school.

Basma : Why?

Sara : Because it's near my house,

Basma : What do you do in your (3)..time?

Sara : I (4)..... help my mum with the housework.

Basma : Great. Do you (5)..... any brothers or sisters?

Sara : Yes, I do. I have one sister.

2 -Maher : Hello, Essam.

Essam : (1).....Maher.

Maher : What's our favourite (2).....?.

Essam : My favourite sport is football.

Maher : Great .I like playing (3).....

Essam : Well, Chess is a great hobby. I like it, Too..

Maher : Did you (4).....any chess competitions?

Essam : yes, I won Alexandria chess competition last year.

Maher : (5).....is the next competition?

Essam : in October..

3-You : I like to do the same things every .

A friend : So you have a daily

You : (1)..... . I usually get up early .

A friend : (2)do you usually get up?

You : I always get up at 6:30.

A friend : (3).....do you eat breakfast with ?

You : I (4)..... eat breakfast with my father. I eat it with my mother only.

A friend : Why not?

You : (5).....my father always goes to work very early. What about you?

A friend : I don't have a routine at all.

4-Judy : Do you live in a flat or a house?

Jana : I live in a house (1).....a large garden.

Judy : Fantastic! How (2).....rooms do you have?

Jana : We've got three rooms, a bathroom and a kitchen.

Judy : Have you got a bedroom of your own?

Jana : No. I (3).....a room with my sister.

Judy : How (4).....you like your bedroom?

Jana : It's very comfortable. It has a big window and a wardrobe.

Judy : (5).....there curtains in your room?

Jana : Yes, there are.

5-Ali : What time (1) your brother get up ?

Hassan : He gets up at seven o'clock.
Ali : How does he (2) to school every day ?
Hassan : He goes there bus every day.
Ali : How (3) lessons does he have?
Hassan : (4) has nine lessons a day.
Ali : What subject does he (5) most?
Hassan : He likes English

6-Dina : What's your typical day like ?
Jana : I usually get up at six o'clock.
Dina : When do you (1).....breakfast?
Jana :At six thirty-with my family.
Dina : What (2).....do you arrive at home ?
Jana : At 7:45 in my father's car.
Dina : When do you (3).....school?
Jana : At 1:30 in the (4).....
Dina : Do you always do your homework after lunch ?
Jana : (5)....., I do.

7-Radwa: Hi, Seham. What are you doing?
Seham: Hi, Radwa. I'm writing (1) an
Radwa : (2) Toare you writing?
Seham: To my pen-friend Jane.
Radwa: Where (3).....she live?
Seham: She lives (4)..... France.
Radwa: How(5)..... is she?
Seham: She is 13.

Mr/mohamed Fawzi

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mrs Hala was a teacher of English in a preparatory school. She was very kind and helpful, so all students liked her. She used to come to school at 7 o'clock in the morning to give their students more lessons and help them with their homework. She has got a small family . her husband, Mr Samir is a doctor, her two daughters Sama and Nada and her only son Salah. Salah is going to be a dentist. But her elder daughter Sama who likes English and science wants to be a doctor like her father. Nada, the youngest daughter, wants to be a computer programmer. They are a happy family.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1.Why did Mrs Hala come to school at 7 o'clock?.....
- 2.How many children have Mrs Hala got?.....
- 3.Why do you think all students like Mrs Hala?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4.Nada is the.....in the family.
a) longest b) youngest c) tallest d) heaviest
- 5.The teacher's only son is going to be a.....
a) teacher b) doctor c) dentist d) farmer
- 6.Mrs Hala's husband works in a.....
a) bank b) school c) farm d) hospital

Most people have three meals every day; breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals at known times; in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But in fact most of them don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very important, and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables. People should not eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many sugar drinks. To keep healthy, doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks, do exercise or practise any sport.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What should people eat and drink to keep healthy?

2. How many meals are there in the day?

3. What do doctors advise people not to do?

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The underlined word "them" refers to

a. doctors b. people c. fruits d. meals

5. people care about food.

a. All b. Many c. Few d. No

6. Doctors say that people should not eat too many.....

a. cakes b. vegetables c. fruits d. drinks

Mr/mohamed Fawzi

I'm Hassan. My family lives in Alexandria, but my dad doesn't work in Egypt. He works in England. He went to the airport on Sunday evenings and he caught the plane to England. He will come home next month. On Saturday, I don't go to school, and my brother doesn't go to school as well. We play chess or go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My sister is three and she doesn't swim. She watches us. I hope to travel to England when I grow up to complete my study there. My father encourages me to do that.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Hassan's father work ?

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

3. How long will Hassan's father stay in England ?

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to....

a. Hassan b. Hassan's father c. Hassan's sister d. Hassan's family

5. When do they go to the park ?.....

- a. On Sunday b. On Saturday c. Everyday d. On Wednesday
 6. Hassan hopes to travel to.....
 a. France b. England c. China d.KSA

1-choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

- 1 - I go to the baker's with my mother.....; we always buy bread in the morning. **(WB)**
 a) every b) dairy c) diary d) daily
 2 -My father likes to read stories.....the sofa in the evenings.
 a) at b) on c) to d) in
 -3- I usually.....my friends to have fun after I do my homework.
 a) text b) test c) make d) read
 4- All children like to.....sports in their free time.
 a) make b) play c) spend d) go
 5- We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday, because my family like to have a.....
 a) joy b) difference c) fun d) routine
 6- My brother has an important.....today. He hopes to get the new job.
 a) view b) review c) group d) interview
 7- My.....friend is called Waleed. I like him so much.
 a) best b) worst c) ugly d) bad
 8- I live in a.....of flats with my parents and two sisters.
 a) packet b) block c) piece d) wall
 9- I like to.....to my grandma when she tells us stories before we sleep.
 a) go b) walk c) listen d) get
 10- We go to the.....when we want to buy bread.
 a) butcher's b) chemist's c) baker's d) grocer's
 11 Young people should learn how to.....their free time usefully.
 a) lose b) have c) do d) spend
 12 He went to the station to.....the bus to work.
 a) take b) ride c) climb d) talk
 13- Come and sit on this.....; four people can sit on it. **(WB)**
 a) sofa b) chair c) bed d) wheelchair
 14-I saw Ahmed's father on his.....to work this morning. **(WB)**
 a) road b) street c) away d) way
 15-What activities do you.....at the weekend, Habiba?
 a) make b) do c) get d) go
 16- A.....is a place where people go when they do something wrong.
 a) clinic b) workshop c) prison d) hospital
 17- Roberta feels.....when some men take their father from their home. **(WB)**
 a) terrible b) glad c) pleased d) boring
 18 The family don't have much money and now they are..... **(WB)**
 a) poor b) rich c) ugly d) boring
 19- There are four.....on the sofa.
 a) chairs b) cushions c) tables d) windows
 20- We have a beautiful.....on the floor in front of the living room.
 a) fridge b) curtain c) carpet d)TV
 21- I have a.....of drawers where I can put many things.
 a) chest b) test c)box d) piece
 22- My little sister always looks at the.....to see herself in it.
 a) drawer b) carpet c) wardrobe d) mirror
 23- My mother has a big.....to put her dresses in.
 a) carpet b) curtain c) drawer d) wardrobe
 24- There's a big.....in the bathroom where we wash up.
 a) bath b) basin c) shower d) tap

- 25- I have a.....in my bedroom to put all my books on.
a) wardrobe b) mirror c) bookshelf d) carpet
- 26- I always put a bottle of water in.....of me when I study.
a) front b) near c) between d) next
- 27- Students should.....English every day to be perfect at it.
a) tell b) practise c) send d) forget
- 28- This isn't your book. It.....to your sister. Don't play with it.
a) gives b) belongs c) clowns d) spends
- 29- My school is a short.....from my house. It's very near.
a) fly b) ride c) drive d) walk
- 30- El Faiyoum has many.....reserves which you can visit.
a) traditional b) tradition c) nature d) natural
- 31- Many young men look.....jobs to earn enough money.
a) at b) after c) up d) for
- 32- I get up early to.....dressed and go to school on time.
a) get b) do c) have d) make
- 33- He has a small shop in the city centre. He.....food and drinks.
a) sells b) buys c) borrows d) spends
- 34- We have a big house where we live upstairs, but my grandparents live.....
a) downstairs b) under stairs c) on the roof d) underground
- 35- You can see yourself in the..... **WB**
a) lamp b) mirror c) carpet d) curtain
- 36- On a.....day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her jobs. **WB**
a) electrical b) typical c) technical d) technological
- 37- Roberta's family home in the city is big and.....It is really nice. **WB**
a) ugly b) attractive c) boring d) terrible
- 38 A.....is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes. **WB**
a) wardrobe b) mirror c) carpet d) drawer
- 39- my parents sometimes getlate.
a) at home b) for home c) to home d) home
- 40- My dad starts work very early, so he home before we get up
a) goes b) walks c) leaves d) watches
- 41- my father likes travellingthe train everyday.
a. on b. in c. by d. with
- 42- I hope to buy a big home a large garden.
a) on b) for c) by d) with
- 43- The children were very happy when they.....their father again.
a) ate b) spent c) bought d) saw
- 44- The police took him.....from home.
a) way b) a way c) away d) ways
- 45- living in the desert has a lot of.....
a. houses b. adventures c. rooms d. shops
- 46- The farmer doesn't need to..... his goats, as they can find their food in the mountains. **WB**
a. eat b. feed c. play d. drink
47. My uncle has a.....in the garden and he uses it to water his plants. **WB**
a) tap b) tip c) tape d) tube
48. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but he can.....our food. **WB**
a. share b. feed c. shade d. wash
- 49- In Germany, There is a 'breakfast' after the first lesson.
a- brake b- park c- bark d- break
50. Can you.....my mother for me, because my phone isn't working.
a. text b. next c. send d. speak
- 51) My dad never worksthe weekend.
a. at b. with c. on d. of

52- El Faiyoum is a large city with beautiful nature reserves

- a-nearby b-near c-next to d-nearly

53-The children move from the city with their mother to a small house near a railway

- a. mine b. fine c. line d. shine

54-I have two jobs to when I get home from school

- a. take b. make c. work d. do

Grammar

1- I get up late at the weekends. I never get up early.

- a never b always c usually d sometimes

2.What time your first lesson this morning?

- a. is b. are c. does d.do

3.She the bus to get to school.

- a.taking b.take c.takes d.talk

4.We to play tennis every week in the club.

- a.prefers b. preferred c. preferring d.prefer

5-Dina goes swimming on Thursday and Saturday. She goes swimming.

- a. never b.sometimes c. always d.usually

6-Amir walks to school on Sunday, Monday, Tuesday and Thursday.

- a. often b.never c. always d.usually

7-I have breakfast at 7 o'clock every morning. I have breakfast at that time.

- a. often b. never c. usually d.always

8-We go to school on Fridays.

- a never b always c usually d sometimes

9-My brother a clever tennis player.

- a always b is always c always is d never

10-Does Ali coffee with his family ?

- a drink always b drinks always c always drink d always drinks

11-Amr late.

- a often is b is always c always is d is every

12-Birds always in the early morning.

- a singing b to sing c sings d sing

13- He never his homework in the evening.

- a-do b-does c-did d-doing

14. What time does he usually work?

- a. leave b. leaves c. leaving d. left

15.She a sports car .

- a) never drive b) drives never c) never drives d) never

16-Sama and Henda always in the home.

- a. help b. helping c. helps d. to help

17. A:How do you watch TV? B : Twice a week.

- a. many b. long c. much d. often

18- our teacher of English speaks Arabic in class.

- a- don't b- doesn't c- never d- won't

19. Do you on Fridays?

- a.often travel b.travel often c.often travels d.travels often.

20-My father reads the newspaper in the morning. He reads it every morning.

- a. often b. never c. always d.sometimes

21-Students in classes during the break.

- a. stay always b. never stay c. always stay d.stay never



- 22_monaeat peppers. She doesn't like them at all.
a. often b. never c. always d.every
- 23-.....children like playing computer games ?
a. Does b. Do c. Are d.Were
- 24-Does Alilunch with his family ?
a has always b have always c always have d always has
- 25- Hany and you nevercomputer games with me.
a.play b. plays c. is playing d.are playing
- 26-.....Nabil's sisters play tennis? الجيزة ٢٠٢٠
a- Is b- Do c- Are d- Does
- 27-Tamer and his brotherthe family car. القاهرة ٢٠٢٠
a wash b washes c washing d is washing
- 28-.....speak English?
a.You do b. Are you c. You are d. Do you
- 29) Sorry, Heba.....not here at the moment.
a. is b. does c. are d. do
- 30- Does Hend text her friend before she.....to bed ?
a. go b. going c. goes d. is going

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1-Does he often..... (goes) out this evening ?
2-M teacher always..... (work) very hard.
3-How often..... (do) sami go swimming a week ?
4-I always..... (listens) to the teacher carefully.
5-my brothers usually..... (watching) TV before they go to bed
6. My father..... (never play) chess at home.
7- Ali sometimes.....(have) lunch at school
8-Nada..... (don't) usually get up before seven.
9-Tamer..... (be usually) very friendly
10- They don't always..... (plays) tennis on Sundays.
11-(Do)..... your father a good teacher ?
12- They..... (be) never late for school.
13-The school bus never..... (stop) near my house
14- why.....(do) you always late?
15-Nabil and tamer.....(not) watch TV everyday.
16 - Do you..... (goes) to the club every day ?
17- Parents..... (not) like fish.
18- My daily routine(has) the same every school day ?

**6-Write a paragraph of six (80) words on
"Daily routine"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



"you bedroom"

"Your penfriend"

"Jobs you do at home"

Unit 2 How are you feeling?

2- complete the following dialogue:
1-Asem : Hi, Nader. Can you tell me a little bit about your job?
Nader : Certainly! What would you like to know?
Asem : First of all, what (1).....your job?
Nader : I work as a computer (2).....
Asem : What (3).....you do in your job?
Nader : I design programs to use at home.
Asem : What (4).....you doing at the moment?
Nader : I'm developing in-house programs.
Asem : (5).....you ever have meetings?
Nader : Yes, I usually have meetings once a month.

2-Judy : Hi Leila. Where are you?

Leila : Hi Judy. I'm in the (1)..... with my family.

Judy : What are you doing in the park?

Leila : I'm sitting (2)..... a tree. It's very sunny.

Judy : Are your brothers sitting, too?

Leila : No, they aren't. They're playing (3).....

Judy : Is your dad playing football with them?

Leila : (4)....., he isn't. He's not here. He's working today.

Judy : What's your mother doing?

Leila : **She's** reading a (5).....

3-Emad : What is your father's job, Adham?

Adham : He is a (1)

Emad : (2)..... does he work?

Adham : He works in (3) a.....

Emad :What (4)he do?

Adham : He teaches Arabic to students.

Emad : Does he (5)..... his work?

Adham: Yes, he likes his work very much.

4-Toka : Hello, Sara. What are you doing?

Sara : I'm looking at my photo album.

Toka : Can I see your photos?

Sara : Sure. This a (1).....of me and my friends.

Toka : It's beautiful.

Sara : It (2).....when we were on the school trip.

Toka : Tell me about your friends.

Sara : In the (3).....is my friend Mona. She was in front of us.

Toka : Who's the girl (4).....the left?

Sara : She's Dalia. She's in the (5)..... T-shirt.

5-Randa : You look happy, Leila. What's the matter?

Leila : I've passed my driving test.

Randa : (1).....| Do you have a car?

Leila : Yes, my uncle has just bought a new car. He's going to give, me his old one.

Randa : That's great (2)..... !

Leila : So, would you (3).....to go for a drive on Saturday?

Randa : Yes, I'd love to. (4).....will you go?

Leila : Well, we could have a picnic and go to the Pyramids.

Randa : (5).....time will you come?

Leila : I'll come for you at about 11 o'clock.

6-Ali : Hi, how are you?

Jack: Hi. I'm (1)..... thanks.

Ali : Excuse me, (2).....is your name?

Jack: I'm Jack. What's yours?

Ali : I'm Ali. (3).....are you from, Jack?

Jack: I'm from America. I'm new here.

Ali : What are you (4).....in the university?

Jack: I'm studying Biology. What about you?

Ali : Biology is a very interesting field of study, but I'm studying business

Jack: I (5).....to see you again soon.

3-Read the following , then answer the questions :

1.My name's Sherief. I love football. I am a great fan of all football teams. I am also interested in cars. I'm crazy about driving and I also enjoy fixing cars. When I was ten, I had many toy cars. I played with them, repaired the ones my friends broke. I also helped my dad fix his car. So, I want to become a mechanic and open up my own shop. My parents are happy with my choice, too. They think it's important that I do a job that I like. I have a good job now and I really enjoy it. I'm planning to get married soon. Who knows, maybe I will have a car shop in the future.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Which sport does Sherief like?.....
2. What do Sherief's parents think of his choice to be a mechanic?
3. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The best title for this passage is.....
a) Sherief's job choice b) Cars in our life
c) Sherief and football d) Sherief and his friends
5. Sherief wants to have a.....in the future.
a) car b)toy c) toy car d) car shop
6. Sherief helped his dad.....his car.
a) fix b) wash c) push d) drive

2-Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for enjoyment just to feel happy and spend a nice time. Others read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails, and letters that we receive

A) Answer the following questions

1-How is reading a helpful habit ?

2-Why do you think you need to read in a quiet place?

3-How can you remember what you read?

: B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d

- 4-What do you think the word " Others " refer to ?
a) goals b) people c) points d) glasses
- 5-The underlined word " enjoyment " means.....
a) discussion b) mysteries c) sadness d) pleasure
- 6-The word improves means to make it
a) bad b) better c) worse d) sad

3-Omar decided that he wanted to be a doctor when he grows up He made his decision after seeing a television programme about a doctor who worked in China. So, Omar worked hard at school, passed all his exams and went to university to study to be a doctor. He

spent most of his time working, and had time to make many good friends. When he finished, he found a job as a doctor working in a village in northern India. He worked with a group of older doctors and a young doctor. Most of the time, they worked in the small village hospital, but on two days a week they went to a nearby town and helped the Indian doctors who worked there. One day, when Omar was working in the larger hospital, a young man came in with a broken leg. He wasn't Indian. When the man saw Omar, he said, "Omar! Do you remember me? We were in the same secondary school!"

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1-When did Omar decide he wanted to be a doctor?
- 2-Where did the doctor on the television programme work?
- 3-What was wrong with the young man who came into the hospital?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4 In which part of India was the village where Omar worked?
a) The capital. b) The north. c) The south. d) The east.
- 5 Who did Omar work with at first in India?
a) Other doctors. b) Some older and younger doctors,
c) Older doctors. d) A group of friends.
- 6 How did the young man in hospital know Omar?
a) They were together in the same school.
b) Their parents were friends.
c) They played for the same football team.
d) They met at the airport.

4-If you want to be good at English, the best thing you can do is to build up your words. First of all, you should read a lot. You can read short stories, comics, newspapers, magazines, etc. As you read, you can guess the meanings of new words. If you cannot, then look them up in a dictionary. Another way is to watch movies in English. Keep a vocabulary notebook and write down a few words each day. You should revise them. In my opinion, to speak to people all you need is to use the words you learned. Practice makes perfect

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?.....
2. What is the most important thing when you speak to people?.
3. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Don't stop if you read a word you don't understand, you can the meaning of new words.
a) guess b.write c .say d) read
5. You should keep a notebook for new.....to help you to learn new vocabulary.
a) letters b)words c. passages d) grammar
6. The word "movies" is another word for.
a.books b.films c.dictionaries d. stories

4-choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- 1- Aya is a nurse. She helps her.....to get better.
a) illnesses b) patients c) medicines d) diseases
- 2 Falafel is a/an.....meal in Egypt.
a) international b) traditional c) modern d) new
- 3 She works in a hospital. She is working in the children's.....at the moment.
a) word b) award c) ward d) world
- 4- You mustn't.....you car here. It's not allowed.
a) come b) park c) bark d) carry
- 5-He sells many things in the street. He has a small.....

- a) basket b) wall c) stall d) farm
- 6- My little brother is very He always wants to stay at home and watch TV! **WB**
- a. dangerous b. boring c. lazy d. active
- 7- We need a computer engineer to.....our computer because it doesn't work. **WB**
- a) make b) do c) play d) repair
- 8- I can't come to the park because Ithe house today. **WB**
- a. clean b. make c. do d. stay
- 9- Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use..... **WB**
- a. food stall b. colours c. sign language d. sports
- 10- Nabila feels ill, so shein bed this morning. **WB**
- a. clean b. spend c. do d. stay
- 11- On Saturday, I usually.....time with my cousins. **WB**
- a. make b. spend c. do d. stay
- 12- What time do you..... your homework after school? **WB**
- a. make b. clean c. do d. stay
- 13- It is usually easy to..... with people in other countries if you speak English. **WB**
- a. telephone b. spend c. write d. communicate
- 14- He answers customers' calls in a big store. He is a.....worker.
- a) call-centre b) centre c) ship d) caller
- 15- The police officer drives around the city to.....sure that people are safe.
- a) take b) do c) make d) have
- 16- Children should be careful when they buy things from a street-food.....
- a) buyer b) seller c) worker d) waiter
- 17- He likes drawing. He wants to be a/an.....
- a) teacher b) doctor c) engineer d) artist
- 18 a.....person is a person who can't hear.
- a) blind b) weak c) deaf d) strong
- 19 She is learning.....She wants to improve her handwriting.
- a) technology b) biology c) geography d) calligraphy
- 20 He lives next door. He is my.....
- a) neighbour b) classmate c) servant d) patient
- 21 My mother asked me to buy her two.....of beans.
- a) pieces b) slices c) bottles d) tins
- 22- I always get up early to.....ready for school.
- a) get b) make c) do d) have
- 23- He helped his father to.....the hole in the roof of the house.
- a) have b) hurt c) take d) repair
- 24- Children like to go.....school trips.
- a) on b) at c) in d) by
- 25 My father.....me a surprise when he bought me a new bike.
- a) borrowed b) lent c) gave d) took
- 26 To get a good job, you should have many.....
- a) skulls b) skills c) scales d) presents
- 27 My sister likes to make her own clothes by herself. She likes.
- a) swimming b) seeing c) sewing d) sawing
- 28- Children should be careful when they use the knife because it's very.
- a) quick b) wet c) sharp d) hard
- 29 You can catch a plane from a/an..... **WB**
- a. station b. port c. airport d. hospital
- 30 When you invite a person to your house, they are your **WB**
- a. grass b. guests c. guess d. glass
- 31 When you go on holiday, you can put your clothes in a **WB**
- a. suitcase b. suit c. shopping bag d. handbag
- 32 My friend's sister is going to get married, so he invited me to her..

- a) wedding b) birthday c) picnic d) journey
- 33- My sister is sitting under the tree. She is....a selfie.
- a) doing b) taking c) making d) getting
- 34- We went on a trip in the and slept in tents
- a. castle b. cave c. tower d. desert
- 35- You shouldn't leave a child in the house.
- a) lonely b) alone c) along d) alike
- 36- A..... someone who is between 13 and 19 years old.
- a) child b) teenager c) toddler d) seller
- 37- It's for teenagers to get worried or to feel sad sometimes.
- a) happy b) nature c) normal d) better
- 38- His parents were very about his prize.
- a) pleased b) worried c) sad d) normal
- 39- It's his favourite show because it always.....him laugh
- a-walks b-takes c-makes d-goes
- 40- I'm waiting excitedly to geta plane for the first time.
- a- into b- off c- on d- out of
- 41- I went with my mother to the market. It was very busy. There were lots of.....
- a) sellers b) crowds c) messengers d) workers
- 42) Every teacher should.....students kindly.
- a) hurt b) wave c) treat d) hit
- 43- The zebra has.....skin.
- a) heavy b) colourful c) striped d) plain
- 44) I like watching films for Ahmed Helmy. He's really.....
- a) funny b) boring c) sad d) difficult
- 45 He wants to be a pilot to.....a plane.
- a) ride b) drive c) fly d) catch
- 46 You should be.....with your neighbours.
- a) friendly b) ugly c) rude d) lazy
- 47 To be.....is to be happy about the good things in your life.
- a) lonely b) worried c) grateful d) greedy
- 48 Students who can't see well should sit in the.....of the class.
- a) foreground b) background c) underground d) playground
- 49 It's kind to smile.....the person you meet.
- a) in b) to c) at d) of
50. If there is a problem with your computer system, call the computer for help .
- a) doctor b) nurse c) waiter d) engineer
- 51 It's a.....that you don't help your parents.
- a) shame b) happiness c) joy d) fun
- 52 I I you are enjoying your trip.
- a) want b) hope c) show d) pass
- 53 I'm so happy to see you after these long years. I really.....you.
- a) lose b) win c) earn d) miss
- 54 I'm so happy. I have.....my exams.
- a) succeeded b) passed c) won d) earned
- 55 Try to the meaning of this word.
- a) Talk b) Make c) read d) Guess
- 56 I often help my mum.....our food.
- a) prepare b) repair c) sell d) do
- 57 Teachers should speak kindly.....their students.
- a) at b) for c) to d) by
- 58 Everyone congratulated me.....passing my maths test.
- a) on b) at c) with d) by
- 59 My last trip was.....I'll go there again.

- a) boring b) amazing c) terrible d) bad
 60 We always go to our football.....to keep fit.
 a) practise b) practice c) fan d) experience
 61 After the match, the.....told me that I would be in the football team.
 a) worker b) coach c) surgeon d) volunteer

Grammar

المضارع البسيط تم شرحه من قبل

The present continuous المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

1. في حالة الإثبات: يتكون المضارع المستمر من (am, is, are + verb + ing)

I → am
 He, She, It → is
 We, You, They → are } + (v + ing).



- ✎ - Listen! She is playing the piano.
 ✎ - They are cleaning the garden now

2. في حالة النفي: يتكون المضارع المستمر من (am, is, are + not + verb + ing)

I → am not
 He, She, It → isn't
 We, You, They → aren't } + (v + ing).

3. في حالة السؤال: يتكون المضارع المستمر من (am, is, are + inf... + verb + ing)

What (كلمة الاستفهام) { is } he, she, it → } + (v + ing)...?
 { Are } we, you, they → }

- e.g ✎ - Are They playing tennis now? ✎ - No, they aren't.
 ✎ - What are you doing now? ✎ - I'm reading a lesson.

ملاحظات:

1. إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف (e) ، نحذف (e) ونضع (ing) مثل :-

move → moving come → coming live → living bake → baking

ما عدا .

dye يصبغ → dyeing singe يحرق → singeing be → being

2. إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك واحد (a - e - i - o - u) يُكرر الحرف الأخير ونضع (ing) مثل :-

cut → cutting put → putting get → getting drop → dropping run → running

ما عدا :-

remember → remembering visit → visiting listen → listening
 happen → happening enjoy → enjoying snow → snowing

3. إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرفان متحركان ، نضع (ing) مثل :-

eat → eating read → reading need → needing see → seeing

4. إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ie تحذف، ونضع (ying) مثل :-

lie → lying die → dying tie → tying

2. الاستخدام Usage

1. نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يحدث أثناء الكلام.

- a-am drinking b-drink c-drinks d- drinking
- 6- Ali.....a jacket today because it is very hot. **WB**
- a-not wear b-isn't wearing c-don't wear d- doesn't wear
- 7- My fatherin a bank in the city centre.
- a. works b. worked c. am working d. work
- 8- Amrto work by train every day.
- a. traveling b. travels c. is traveling d. travel
- 9- I can't come to the phone now. Ia shower.
- a. am having b. have c. will have d. am doing
- 10- We can't play tennis today because it
- a. rains b. rained c. is raining d. rain
- 11- What do you do after school? - Ia nap.
- a. usually took b. took usually c. take usually d. usually take
- 12-My fatherme to school.
- a taking b sometimes takes c sometimes take d is sometimes taking
- 13) On Sundays, they.....volleyball in physical education class.
- a. plays b.play c. will be played d. are playing
14. Hany often go to school on foot, but today his father..... him to school.
- a) drives b) was driving c) is driving d) driving
- 15.....sitting next to your best friend ? **SB**
- a. You do b. do You c. Are you d. You are
- 16.....the students in your class working ? **WB**
- a. Are b. Have c. Can d. Do
17. She isn't at the hospital today.
- a. work b. working c. works d. worked
18. What..... doing at the moment ?
- a. they are b. are they c. they were d. were they
- 19-Birds alwaysin the early morning.
- a singing b to sing c sings d sing
- 20-Sama and Hend always.....in the home.
- a. help b. helping c. helps d. to help
- 21-Basel is a computer engineer. He usually computers. **WB**
- a. repair b. is repairing c. repairing d. repairs
- 22-The police officer..... a school today. **WB**
- a. visiting b. visits c.is visiting d.visit
- 23-Nader..... in the shop, but his brother is ill so he is helping there today. **WB**
- a. isn't usually working b. not usually work c.don't usually work d. doesn't usually work
- 24-My friend sews..... **SB**
- a-bad b-worst c-worse d- badly
- 25-Mr Ahmed speaks English..... **SB**
- a-well b-good c-best d- better
- 26-The cat is sitting in the sun..... **SB**
- a-laziest b-lazier c-lazy d- lazily
- 27-The teacher treats all her children..... **SB**
- a-kinder b-kindest c-kindly d- kind
- 28-She is laughingin this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. **SB**
- a-carefully b-slowly c-loudly d- hungrily
- 29-We're sittingon the rocks because they are sharps ! **SB**
- a-carefully b-loudly c-excitedly d- hungrily
- 30-It's at the end of the day and the guests are leaving. **SB**
- a-slowly b-loudly c-excitedly d- hungrily
- 31-I'm sitting under the tree andeating my lunch. **SB**
- a. badly b-loudly c-excitedly d- hungrily

32- Hamid did very.....in his exams last week.

- a- well b- fast c- bad d- good

33- Huda's uncle always singswhen he's working.

- a- slow b- happy c- happily d- quiet

34 Amal always paints.....

- a- beautiful b- happy c- beautifully d- good

35- The class listened..... to their teacher.

- a- beautifully b- quickly c- easily d- carefully

36- He climbed the hill..... . He wasn't tired at all.

- a badly b friendly c hardly d easily

37. At the end of the school year, some students tryto make up for the lost time.

- a) hardship b) hardly c) hard d) hardest

38. The driver of the school bus drives

- a) carefully b) careful c) careless d) slow

39. He is eating

- a) hungry b) angry c) hungrily d) angrily

40-He arrived an hour but he caught the bus .

- a) late b) lately c) fast d) hard

41- That bird is flying very..... **WB**

- a-careful b-quick c-loud d- fast

42-the guests found their hotel.....after they bought a map of the city.

- a) easy b) easier c) ease d) easily

43 It is important to drive when it is raining. **WB**

- a-carefully b-quickly c-loudly d- carelessly

44 Our football team will win because they are playing very..... **WB**

- a- well b- quick c- bad d- good

45-Please, speak, people at the back can't hear you.

- a-politely b-wisely c-loudly d- carelessly

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1.You..... (write) an email now.
- 2.I(drink) tea at the moment
- 3-Nabil and tamer..... (not) watch TV everyday.
- 4.....(Do) you wearing a school uniform?
- 5- Mr Osman.....(live)in a lovely flat.
- 6-At the moment, Hany..... (playing) football in the club.
- 7- Manal and Mona.....(study)-calligraphy every day.
- 8-(Does) Ali playing football now ?
- 9-Does he often..... (goes) out this evening ?
- 10- My friend sews(bad) .
- 11- The children are singing..... (loud) in the playground
- 12- As there was much time, we walked to school..... (slow)
- 13-Every one admires her because she plays the violin very..... (good).
- 14-The lesson is easy. I can study it.....(easy)
- 15-She looked..... (happy) at the children.
- 16-I'm waiting..... (excited) to get on a plane or the first time.
- 17-He is shouting and speaking.....(angry).
- 18- She usually arrives..... (lately).
- 19-Heba is a..... (love)student. she is kind and pleasant
- 20-My sister usually.....(go) to school by bus.
- 21-My brother..... (play) football at the moment.
- 22-They are singing(happy).
- 23.Eman and her neighbours.....(repair) Mr Osman's flat now.
- 24.A The teacher treats all her children..... (kind)
- 25.Why (be) you laughing at the moment?
- 26.Fady(not wear) a jacket today because it is very hot.
27. The police officer (talk)at a school today..
- 28.Nader..... (not usually work) in the shop .

6-Write a paragraph of six (80) words on

"Which job would you like to do ? "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

"How to be happy in your life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

your problems at school

Unit 3 Great jobs

surgeon	جراح	brain	المخ	charity	مؤسسة خيرية
scientist	عالم	heart	القلب	The countryside	الريف
Charity worker	فاعل خيري	lungs	الرئتين	emergency	حالة طوارئ
Sports coach	مدرب رياضي	Breathe	يتنفس	Natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
win	يفوز	pump	يضخ/ مضخة	burns	حروق
handball	كرة يد	blood	دم	organisation	منظمة
junior	مبتدئ/ فاشئ	earthquake	الزلازل	patient	مريض
senior	كبير سنا/ راشد	heroic	بطولي	Stop infection	يمنع العدوى
competition	منافسة	society	مجتمع	rubbish collectors	عمال جمع القمامة
hero	بطل	research	يجري بحث	Street cleaners	عمال نظافة الشوارع
treatment	علاج	serious	جاد/ خطر	manager	مدير
medicine	طب/ دواء	cut	جرح/ يجرح/	scared	مرعوب
score	يسجل/ يحرز	Do experiments	يجري تجارب علمية	Fire fighter	رجل الاطفاء
volunteer	متطوع	Sew cuts	يخيط الجروح	Police officer	ضابط شرطة
furniture	اثاث	Do things	يفعل اشياء	Proud of	فخور ب
jewellery	مجوهرات	agree	يوافق	Ancient Egyptians	القدماء المصريين

2- Complete the following dialogue:

1-Enas : Hello, Huda. Can ! ask you some questions?

Huda : Hi, Enas. Sure.

Enas : Where (1).....your parents live when they were young?

Huda :They (2).....in Tanta.
Enas : What did your grandfather do?
Huda : He (3).....a farmer.
Enas : Really? (4).....he grow fruits?
Huda :Yes, of course.
Enas : What about your grandmother?
Huda : She (5).....work. She was a housewife.

2-A reporter makes a report about footballers.

Reporter : Hello (1)..... Is your name?
Footballer : Nasser hany
Reporter : What did you (2)to do 20 years ago?
Footballer :I used to (3).....football
Reporter : (4).....you earn much money from it?
Footballer : No, I didn't. we played because we loved playing for our country.
Reporter : I wish you more success.
footballer : (5).....

3-Mazin : Hello, Hany.

Hany : Hello, Mazin.
Mazin : Did you (1).....to live in Cairo when you were young?
Hany : (2).....I used to live in Giza.
Mazin : Did you use to (3).....to school?
Hany : Yes. I used to go to school on foot.
Mazin : What hobby (4).....you use to do?
Hany : I used to read stories. What about you?
Mazin : I used to (5).....
Hany : Great

4-Omar : I think rubbish collectors can be heroes.

Ali : What do you(1)..... ?
Omar : I(2)..... , we need rubbish collectors.2
Ali : Sorry, I don't (3).....
Omar : I mean they do something very useful. The city would be terrible without them!
Ali : That's(4)..... . What about street cleaners?
Omar : I'm not (5)..... . What do you mean?
Ali : I mean, street cleaners are also important.
Omar : Yes, that's true! They help to keep our cities clean.
Ali : I agree!

5-Samy : Do you know that the Egyptian football team won the Africa Cup of Nations?

Aya : That's great, but when (1)..... they win it?
Samy : The last time was (2)..... 2010.
Aya : Oh, no! That was many years ago.
Samy : Yes, but they (3)..... the cup three times one after the other.
Aya : I don't understand you. (4)..... do you mean?
Samy : I mean that Egypt won the cup in 2006, 2008 and 2010.
Aya : Wow! That was a great achievement!

Samy : You are right.

Aya : I'm (5)..... of the Egyptian football team.

6-Tourist : Is Elephantine Island a good place for fish?

Tarek : Do you (1).....you want to go fishing?

Tourist :Yes. That's (2).....I like fishing.

Tarek : Yes. It is a popular place for people who like fishing. Have you thought about going to the desert?

Tourist :{3).....do you mean?

Tarek : Well, you can go to the White Desert. It's very exciting.

Tourist : Did you (4).....go there?

Tarek : Yes. I used to go to Farafra. It's a place in the White Desert.

Tourist : I (5).....what you mean

7.Dalia : Can I ask you some questions?

Eman : Sure.

Dalia : What do (1).....do to our body?

Eman : Lungs take in air and help us to breathe.

Dalia : Can smokers(2).....well?

Eman : Of course not.

Dalia : What (3).....the brain do?

Eman : It tells the parts of our (4)what to do.

Dalia : What does the heart do?

Eman : It (5).....blood around the body.

3-Read the following , then answer the questions :

A long time ago, there was a young boy who used to come and play around a huge apple tree every day. He climbed the tree, ate the apples and took a nap under the shadow. He loved the tree and the tree loved to play with him. The boy got older and didn't play around it every day.

Every time, when he came back, he was sad and didn't want to play with the tree. However, the tree was ready to do anything to make him happy. She gave him all the apples to sell them and buy toys. Then, she told him to cut her branches to build a house and at last, he took her trunk to build a boat and go sailing. Finally, he came back after many years but she told him that she had nothing left except her root. The man told her that he only wanted a place to rest. The man sat down and the tree was very happy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did the boy use to do when he was young?

2. Why did the tree give the boy all the apples?

3. Do you think trees are useful? Why?

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The tree gave the boy her to build a boat.

a. apples b. branches c. trunk d. root

5. The main idea of the passage is to be

a. careless b. helpful c. unkind d. sad

6.the underlined pronoun " her " refers to...

- a. girl b. place c. tree d. man

2-My name is Sandy. I used to work in a bank, but now I work as a secretary in a company. I left the bank and joined the company seven years ago. I enjoy working here and I have made lots of friends. I met my husband in this company and we got married last year. Our manager, Mr Medhat, is a very nice man. He gave us three weeks off and he bought us a very nice wedding gift. When I am not working, I love spending time in my garden. I grow plants and vegetables. When I was a little girl, I wanted to be a gardener. I always helped my parents in the garden. My husband likes gardening, too. We went to the garden centre last weekend and bought some new plants. My husband planted a new apple tree and some roses in the garden. I watered the tomato plants and the strawberries.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why is Mr Medhat a kind man?.....
 2. Where does Sandy's husband work?.....
 3 What does the underlined word "gift" mean?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4.Sandy used to help her parents in the.....
 a) park b) garden c) farm d) barn
 5. Sandy wanted to.....when she was young.
 a) get married b) work in a bank c) be a gardener d) plant apple trees
 6.planted the apple tree.
 a) The husband b) Sandy c) The manager d) None of them

3-One day, Mr Adel took his wife, Mrs. Amira and his children to the city park in order to have a picnic. They drove to the park early in the morning and arrived there at about 10 a.m. Mr Adel and his wife sat under a tree. They ate, drank and read newspapers. Their children ran and jumped on the grass. Amira decided to take some photos of them. While she was talking her camera out of her bag, she heard a cry. An old lady was running after a thief who took her mobile phone and started to run away. Amira quickly took three photos of him. When the police arrived, she showed them the photos. A few hours later, the police caught the thief. They gave the lady her old phone and thanked Amira.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Mr Adel and his family go on a picnic?

 2. How did Mrs Amira help the lady?

 3. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mr Adel and his family went to the park by
 a. train b. metro c. car d. plane
 5. Amira was a woman.
 a. lazy b. clever c. stupid d. helpless
 6.the thief tookfrom the old lady.
 a. photos b. camera c. phone d. newspaper

4-Omar and Salma went to Greece on holiday. They stayed in a nice, big hotel. In the mornings, they had breakfast at the hotel and in the evenings, they ate dinner at

restaurants. One night, they went to a famous restaurant and they sat outside because it was lovely warm weather. They ordered fish with salad and chips. The waiter served it. They saw a big sign. It said, 'Don't feed the cats.' Soon, they saw a beautiful cat. It came up to their table. It sat beside Salma.

Salma cut a piece of fish and gave it to the cat. It ate the fish. The waiter was not happy! The cat did not wait for another piece. It jumped on the table, took the fish and quickly jumped back down. At that moment, the waiter came back out. He saw the cat with the fish. He looked at Salma, but he didn't say a thing. His look said it all.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Where did Omar and Salma go on holiday?.....
- 2- Why did they sit outside the famous restaurant?.....
- 3-Do you think the waiter was angry ?Why?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 3- The waiter gave Salma a bad
a meal b fish c cat d look
- 4- The restaurant was..... to put the sign.
a bad b right c wrong d rude
- 5- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
a fish b table c cat d piece

4-choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1. The Egyptian handball team won an important.....in2020. **SB**
a) development b) experiment c) competition d) completion
2. A.....knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. **WB**
a) sports coach b) surgeon c) police officer d) hero
- 3- A/Andoes experiments to study and find out about how things work. **WB**
a.event b.scientist c.worker d.hero
- 4- A..... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something **WB**
a..team b.charity c.coach d.competition
- 5- A/An..... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.**WB**
a. organisation b. emergency c. charity d. crescent
- 6- The..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature. **WB**
a.mountain b.earthquake c.countryside d.crescent
- 7- Mona's mother is a/an at the hospital; they don't pay her for her work. **WB**
a.coach b. volunteer c.patient d.adult
- 8- You can only open this door in a/an..... , such as a fire. **WB**
a pleasure b charity c emergency d organisation
- 9- A helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home. **SB**
a.prison b.charity c.museum d.theater
- 10- The..... tells the parts of our body what to do. **SB**
a.heart b.stomach c.ey e d.brain
- 11-Lina's cousin in hospital with an eye..... **WB**
a. infected b.infect c.infection d. infectious
- 12-Adam fell off his bike and has a big.....on his arm. **WB**
a.burn b.infection c.cut d.pump
- 13- The lungs take in air and help us to **WB**
a.breeze b.breath c.freeze d.breathe
- 14- A teaches people how to play or improve a sport. **WB**
a sports coach b scientist c teacher d professor
- 15- I always give money to a/an..... that helps poor children. **WB**
a medicine b library c history d charity
- 16- A..... helps people or animals that need help. **WB**

- a.charity worker b.sports coach c.nuclear scientist d.fruit seller
- 17- When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the..... ? **WB**
- a.side b.earth c.countryside d.continent
- 18.My sister has passed all her exams with good marks, and we are very.....of her. **WB**
- a.worried b. pleased c.proud d. crowded
- 19- The heart blood around the body. **WB**
- a.takes in b.drinks c.pumps d.plants
20. My brother is only 10 years. He wants to join the.....team.
- a)small b) old c) junior d) senior
21. My grandfather is my.....He helped many people in his village and built a school.
- a) thief b) hero c) player d) driver
- 22Dr. Magdy Yacoub is a world famous heart.....
- a) worker b) scientist c) waiter d) surgeon
- 23-This great charity helps children..... heart problems.
- a) with b) by c)in d) on
24. A player should practise more to.....his skills in a sport.
- a) lose b) improve c) climb d) make
25. Scientists do many experiments to find.....for many illnesses.
- a) treatments b) developments c) moments d) monuments
26. When I was little, a thief.me and a police officer saved me and arrested him.
- a) attacked b) attracted c) won d) earned
- 27Our team won the match.....Tunisia.
- a) away b) across c) again d) against
28. My father died from..... is a dangerous disease.
- a) cancer b) flu c) kidney d) heart
29. In handball, players score by.....the ball into a goal.
- a) touching b) throwing c) heading d) saving
- 30.Mohamed Salah plays.....Liverpool team in England.
- a) in b) on c) to d) for
31. Working in a group is called.....
- a) homework b) manual work c) teamwork d) housework
- 32.Scientists do experiments to..... how things work.
- a) find out b) improve c) practise d) touch
33. Everybody works hard to be.....
- a) success b) successful c) succeed d) successfully
34. He had a terrible accident and.....a leg.
- a) won b) lost c) missed d) threw
- 35They started a.....to help people from poor families with the disease.
- a) foundation b) solution c) pollution d) introduction
- 36- Omar Samra became the first Egyptian Mount Everest
- a-climbed b-climb c-climbing d-to climb
- 37- We always..... experiments at the school lab every Monday.
- a.make b.do c.look d.fly
- 38-Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work a surgeon for a long time ago.
- a.alike b.as c.like d.such
- 39- is a sport with seven players in a team.
- a.Tennis b.Boxing c.Snorkelling d.Handball
- 40- Huda went to a surgeon to..... the cut in her hand.
- a.cook b.break c.sew d.plant
- 41- The little child off his bike and broke his leg.
- a.felt b.filled c.failed d.fell
- 42-Women usually wear..... which is made of gold.
- a.Furniture b.Jewellery c. Information d.clothes
- 43.My house is very big. It has a lot of.....

- a) medicine b) experience c) information d) furniture
- 44- She helped to look..... poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969.
a.for b.in c. from d.after
45. I always feel.....of dark places.
a) happy b) scared c) hungry d) busy
- 46.Our streets are clean because.....don't leave any paper there.
a) rubbish collectors b) volunteers c) shop workers d) sellers
- 47 My neighbour, Mr Said, is.....He saved a little girl from fire.
a) safe b) dangerous c) serious d) brave
- 48 My mother did some.....work that made me proud of her.
a) dangerous b) boring c) heroic d) scary
- 49 I went to the museum and saw many.....of Ancient Egyptians there.
a) statues b) emails c) selfies d) villas
50. My father is the most important doctor at his hospital. He is the.....
a) worker b) manager c) cleaner d) waiter
- 51- Street..... help to keep our cities clean.
a.builders b.makers c.walkers d.cleaners
- 52 My father is the person who.....for our needs.
a) does b) makes c) buys d) Pays
53. A/An.....is the person who helps people when there is fire.
a) firefighter b) engineer c) surgeon d) waiter
- 54.Milk is useful.....children.
a.for b.in c. from d.after
- 55- What's the..... you're leaving your new job, Sameh?
a.season b.pity c.reason d.question
- 56- My father works as a/an..... in a big factory.
a.manager b.teacher c.tour guide d.farmer
- 57- Good people work to achieve their goals.
a.hardly b.difficult c.easily d.hard
58. We should..... our country clean.
a)keep b)save c) live d) store
- 59- my friend samy was born..... a rich family.
a) at b)in c) on d)into
- 60- Would you like to see the..... match in the stadium? I have tickets.
a final b fun c total d signal

grammar



الزمن الماضي البسيط The past simple tense

التكوين 1-Form

- يتكون الماضي البسيط من (التصريف الثاني للفعل) بإضافة ed أو ied للفعل إذا كان **فعل عادي**)
منتظم (مثل Play – played / help – helped
أما إذا كان **فعل شاذ** (غير منتظم) يُحفظ مثل see - saw / go - went / have – had.

الاستخدام 2-Usage

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن:
١. حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.

E.g. E.g. I **played** football yesterday. I **visited** my aunt a week ago.
I was very tired this morning.

٢. عادة في الماضي (غالباً مع كلمة "used to" والتي معناها "اعتاد أن").

E.g. When I was in Paris, I **used to play (played)** tennis.

Yesterday امس / ago (مدة زمنية) منذ / last مدة زمنية+ الماضي / in+ سنة ماضية (in 2009)
 ذات مرة once / عندما كنت صغير When I was young / في الماضي in the past

مصدر الفعل + did not (didn't) + V.(inf) فاعل

٤. النفي Negative

في حالة النفي نستخدم (المصدر + didn't)

→ I **didn't** play football yesterday. → he **didn't** go to school last week.

لاحظ : هناك اشكال اخرى للافعال في زمن الماضي التي لا يمكن تحول الى النفي باستخدام **didn't** مثل:

was → wasn't / were → weren't / could → couldn't

→ Ali **wasn't** at the cinema last week. → They **weren't** at school yesterday.

→ When I was young, I **couldn't** ride a bike.

٥. السؤال Question

مصدر الفعل + inf..... فاعل + Did

Yes / No تتبع الاتي : عند تكوين السؤال ب

→ Did you watch TV last night? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Were / Was + فاعل + (صفة او اسم او حرف جر + مكان) ؟

→ Were you at the cinema last week? Yes, I was / No wasn't

عند تكوين السؤال ب اداة استفهام

مصدر الفعل + inf..... فاعل + did + اداة الاستفهام

→ What time did you go to bed? Why did he buy that shirt?

→ where did you go yesterday? I went to the club

Were / Was + فاعل + (صفة او اسم او حرف جر + مكان) + اداة استفهام

→ How was your birthday? Where was Samy's old house?

اعتاد ان Used to + inf

١- في الاثبات نستخدم used to (لتعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن)

فاعل + used to + inf

- I **used to play** football when I was young. - He **used to be** a driver, but now he isn't.

- I **used to smoke** a packet a day

He used to live in the countryside.

فاعل + Didn't use to + inf

٢- في النفي نستخدم

- He **didn't use to** play football when he was young.

I **didn't use to** know much about my family history.

Did + فاعل + use to + inf ?

٣- في حالة السؤال بمعنى هل نستخدم

- **Did she use to** live in Cairo? **yes, she did.** / **No, she didn't**

Did you use to get up early? **yes, I did** / **No, I didn't**

3- في حالة السؤال بإداة استفهام

3- في حالة السؤال بإداة استفهام

What sport did you use to play?

I used to play football.

ملاحظات

لاحظ الآتي

1. He used to be thin. (but now he isn't thin / but now he is fat)

2. He used to smoke (but now he doesn't smoke).

(am / is / are) / (get) used to (v + ing) معتاد على

صفة (تعبر عن عادة تحدث في الحاضر)

I'm used to playing football . = I usually play football.

(be) used to + inf = (be) used for + (v+ing)

فعل أساسي في جملة مبنية للمجهول ومعناه يستخدم لكي

- Wood is used to make furniture.

=

- Wood is used for making furniture.

1. In 2016, a shark.....Omar and he lost a leg. WB

a) is attacking b) attacking c) attacked d) attacks

9- There..... a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three. WB

a weren't b didn't c isn't d didn't use to be

3.- Egypt's football team..... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010. WB

a win b won c to win d winning

4- He started playing chess when he was very little and he..... always very good at it. WB

a.does b was c has d were

5.in 1990, Hethe number one chess player in our city. WB

a) is becoming b) becomes c) became d)become

6. Yasser's grandmother..... work in a hospital. WB

a. used to b. is used c. uses to d. using to

7. Dina money to a charity, but now she does. SB

a.didn't use to give b.gave c.doesn't give d.used to give

8. Did Hossam Hassan captain of the Egyptian Football team? SB

a.uses to be b.was c.be d.use to be

9- My grandfather football when he was young, but he can't walk now. WB

a play b used to play c use to play d plays

10- When she was a child, Yasser's Mumplay the piano every day. SB

a used to b was used to c was using to d use to

11- Where..... live before you moved to Alexandria? WB

a.are you b.do you c.you used to d.did you use to

12. They.....in the countryside, but now they live in the city.

a) used to living b) use to live c) used to live d) using to live

13play computer games when you were younger?

a) Did you used b) Does he use to c) Did you use to d) Did you use

14..I went to Hurghada with my family a.....

a) tomorrow b) next week c) last week d) week ago

15. How.....your weekend?

a. did b. does c. was d. do

16-.....you go to the museum last week?

a-Are b-were c-Did d-do

17-Where.....you yesterday?

a-did b-do c-are d-were

18-Where did you live when you a child?

- a-were b-are c-was d-is
- 19-Last summer, my family a fantastic holiday in Morocco.
a. have b. had c. has d. are having
- 20-Salah al-Din al-Ayouby-----the citadel to protect Cairo.
a- built b- build c - builds d- building
- 21-Where.....you yesterday?
a-did b-do c-are d-were
- 22-.....your friends ready for the exam last week?
a-was b-did c-were d-do
23. Mona..... to school yesterday because she was ill.
a. not come b. doesn't come c. don't come d. didn't come
- 24-Hanyat school last Monday.
a-didn't b-doesn't c-wasn't d.hasn't
- 25 My family..... delicious food last week.
a.ate b.eat c.eats d.eating
- 26-I with a dolphin in Hurghada last summer.
a-swim b-swam c-swim d-swimming
- 27- My brother bought his house two years.....
a.ago b.last c.once d.since
28. When you were ten, you use to live in a different house?
a. did b. does c. doing d. do
29. He used to.....clever when he was young.
a. be b. being c. do d. doing
30. He used to..... clever things when he was young.
a. be b. being c. do d. doing
31. Did your children use to a lot?
a. walk b. walks c. walked d. walking
32. He used to smoke ,but now he smoke.
a. doesn't b. don't c. isn't d. wasn't
33. He used to be lazy , but now he.....
a. is b. isn't c. don't d. doesn't
- 34- Hany..... doing his homework an hour ago.
a starts b started c start d starting
- 35- HeAunt Reem when he was 20 and they got married in 1983.
a met b was meeting c meets d will meet
- 36- My fatherus to school as the school bus didn't come.
a drives b drove c drive d driving

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1- I..... (eat) fish last week.
2- who did you..... (seeing) last Monday?
3- she didn't..... (rode) a camel before.
4-We..... (write) in English yesterday.
5-My uncle..... (buy) his house last summer.
6-Hany..... (don't) play tennis yesterday.
7-Hala(be) ill last week.
8. I (sleep) in a tent last night
9. We..... (go) into the cave last holiday.
10- Before Yasser's dad got married, he (doesn't) use to live in Cairo
11- Where did you..... (went) on holiday last summer
12- What.....(do) you visit last week ?
13-How..... (did)your day yesterday ?
14-He swam in the sea, but he didn't(saw) any dolphins.
15- How did you.....(used) to go to school?



- 16- Do you use to have a lot of homework?
- 17- Before he had children, Yasser's grandfather(not)use to know how to drive a car.
- 18- What was your favourite toy when you(be) little?
- 19-In 1990, he.....(become)the number one chess player in our city.
- 20-I didn't.....(used) to like salad when I was younger.
- 21-We used to.....(playing) football.
- 22-My Uncle Rashid(be) born in 1961.
- 23-I(not use) to like fish when I was young.
- 24-Did you visit the Pyramids when you(be) young?

6-Write a paragraph of (90) words on

A person that you are proud of (your hero)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

a great job you like

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

your past habits

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

how life used to be different in ancient Egypt



Unit 4 Into the past

arch	قوس	ruins	اطلال	interesting	شيق
castle	قلعة	stadium	استاذ	protect	يحمي
Complete building	مبنى كامل	statue	تمثال	race	سياق
culture	ثقافة	temple	معبد	recommend	يرشح/يوصى ب
entrance	مدخل	theatre	مسرح	review	مقال نقدية
historic	تاريخي	amazing	مذهل	museum	متحف
mosque	مسجد	ancient	قديم/ اثرى جدا	roman	رومانى
national	قومي/ وطني	awesome	رائع	ticket	تذكرة
pray	يصلى	behave	يتصرف	time	عهد/ عصر
bowl	سلطانية	The museum of Islamic art	متحف الفن الاسلامي	popular	محبوب/ شعبي
coin	عملة معدنية	tool	اداة	senet	لعبة تشبه الشطرنج
figure	شكل	vase	فازة	square	مربع
magazine	مجلة	Web page	صفحة ويب	ingredients	مكونات/مقادير
mask	قناع	chemical	مادة كيميائية	mix	يخلط
necklace	عقد/ قلادة	clay	طين صلصال	ring	خاتم
papyrus	ورق البردى	design	تصميم	pot	اناء
company	شركة	debate	مناظرة	maybe	ربما
historic	تاريخي	environment	البيئة	tourism	السياحة
damage	يتلف	Local people	السكان المحليين	tourist	سائح
area	منطقة	pharaoh	فرعون	special	خاص
century	قرن ١٠٠ عام	report	تقرير	Stone circles	الدوائر الحجرية
follow	يتبع	ruler	حاكم	war	حرب

2-Complete the following dialogue:

1-Amira .What do you think, Hana? Is tourism good for historic places?

Hana : Yes, I (1).....

Amira : Why do you think that?

Hana . Because tourists bring money to an area. This helps the local people.

Amira : 2.....think so.

Hana : Why not?

Amira : As a lot of money goes to big companies, not (3).....people.

Hana : Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment and the local people.

Amira : I (4).....agree. Tourists drop rubbish and damage places.

Hana : I see what you (5)..... , but most tourists behave well.

2-Fady : Hello, Baher. How are you?

Baher : Hi, Fady. Do you (1).....this plan for a new hotel is a good idea?

Fady : I don't think (2)It only has jobs for people in the city.

Baher : I don't (3).....More tourists in the area can help the local people.

Fady : Maybe, but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.

Baher : I see what you (4).....It's important to protect the environment.

Fady : Yes, we should do our best to make it (5).....

Baher : And we should tell other people to look after it.

Fady : I agree with you. Let's talk about that tomorrow.

Baher : That sounds good.

3-Ticket office : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you?

Customer : Good morning. (1).....you tell me your working hours?

Ticket office : (2).....We're open daily from 9:30 to 6:30.

Customer : (3).....like to know how much the tickets are?

Ticket office : Of course. Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.

Customer : Can I buy the tickets at the museum?

Ticket office : Yes, or you can buy them online.

Customer : I'd (4).....to know if I could bring my camera with me.

Ticket office : Of course. But you mustn't take photos inside the museum.

Customer : (5).....you for your help. Goodbye.

4.Hany : Did you visit Jerash before?

Samy : Sorry, What is Jerash?

Hany : Jerash is a Roman (1) in Jordan.

Samy : How (2) is it?

Hany : It is more than 2,000 (3) old!

Samy : How can I visit it?

Hany : You (4) buy a ticket before you go in.

Samy : Are there any theatres in Jerash?

Hany : Sure. Jerash has three Roman(5)

3-Read the following , then answer the questions :

1-The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the museum didn't have space for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,575 designs from more than 80 different countries.

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is further from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza, It has more space for valuable objects. More people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
2. What do you think of museums?
3. How old is the oldest museum?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The word "further" is the opposite of.....
a. ancient b. nearer c. far d. open
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to.....
a. the city centre b. Giza c. the old museum d. GEM
6. The museum is a place to keep.....on display.
a. designs b. pyramids c. treasures d. visitors

2. We don't know who made tea for the first time, but we have heard and read many stories about that Nearly five thousand years ago, the king of China boiled his drinking water under a tree. Some of the leaves fell into the pot. When he drank the water, he liked the taste very much. He thought that the taste came from the leaves of the tree. People drink tea because they think it helps them stay awake for a long time. We all know that tea is grown in China and India. Many people like to drink tea with milk. Others like to have it with lemon when they feel tired. People usually have tea in the morning and after lunch.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do people drink tea?
2. When do people usually drink tea?
3. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "Nearly" means.....
a) opposite b) almost c) nearby d) far
5. People usually drink tea with.....when they are tired
a) milk b) orange c) lemon d) leaves
6. Tea is grown in.....
a) Japan b) China c) India d) both b

3. Egypt has a lot of ancient and modern places to visit. The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo. It took five years to build. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile on Gezira Island. There is a restaurant at the top. It moves, so you can see all of the city below you. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to walk to the top, there are 2,500 stairs! At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Where does the Cairo tower stand?
2. How many windows are there on each floor?
3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. There arestairs
a) 2050 b) 5.200 c) 1000 d) 2.500
5. The Cairo tower is
a. dangerous b. ugly c. fantastic d. small
6. Building the tower started in.....
a) 1961 b) 1916 c) 1950 d) 1956

4.Many tourists like to visit Egypt. They usually come to Egypt in winter. They love to enjoy the fine weather. They visit many places in Egypt such as the Cairo Tower, the Pyramids and the temples. They enjoy the wonderful weather of Luxor and Aswan in winter. They usually take photos of the ancient temples in Egypt and they buy many things as souvenirs to remind them of Egypt. Other tourists like the beautiful beaches in Egypt, so they like to come in summer. They like to visit Hurghada for its fantastic beaches.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Which places do tourists come to see in Egypt?.....
2. Why do they usually go to Luxor and Aswan in winter?.....
- 3.What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4.Tourists visit Luxor and Aswan in.....
a) summer b) spring c) fall d) winter
- 5.The underlined word "ancient" means very.....
a) new b)old c) near d) interesting
6. Tourists go to.....to enjoy the beaches there.
a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Hurghada d) Cairo

4--choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- 1 We walked under a big before we entered the museum. **WB**
a) arch b)statue c) castle d) mosque
2. This building became after an earthquake. **WB**
a) statues b) ruins c) castles d) mosques
- 3.There are more than 2,000.....in the museum.. **WB**
a) subjects b) projects c) parts d) objects
- 4.Heba is not interestedplaying tennis. **WB**
a) on b) in c) with d) to
- 5 We are proud of our.....handball team. They won the cup.
a) world b) modern c) ancient d) national
- 6 In the past, people built.....to watch their favourite sports.
a) museums b) mosques c) stadiums d) theatres
- 7 We bought a new house with a large.....
a) entrance b)wall c) ruin d) castle
- 8 Children must learn how to.....politely all the time.
a) treat b) behave c) do d) make
- 9 When I look out of my bedroom window, I have a beautiful....
a) location b) sight c)view d) review
- 10-They didn't complete this building at all. These.....are thousands of years old.
a) ruins b) arches c) entrances d) castles
- 11 This old castle.....to the Romans times.
a) gets b) dates c) goes d) jumps
- 12 When you travel to a historic place, you should.....a guide.
a) make b) get c) teach d) buy
- 13 Many people are interested.....watching football matches.
a) in b) at c) on d)onto
- 14 Students usually bring.....lunch with them on a trip.
a) bucket b) packet c) baked d)packed
- 15 This book is very interesting. I....it to you.
a) recommend b) advise c) tell d)say
- 16 The trip was.....It was amazing.
a) scary b) pleased c) awesome d) boring

17. We call something is.....when it is very old.

- a) new b) modern c) patient d) ancient

18. People build.....to pray in.

- a) statues b) ruins c) castles d) mosques

19. The museum is full of.....and many other historic objects.

- a) theatres b) statues c) stadiums d) castles

20 Ancient Egyptians made pots and bowls of.....from the Nile.

- a) metal b) wool c) clay d) water

21 Ancient Egyptians used.....for writing.

- a) papyrus b) wood c) wool d) paper

22 A.....is a piece of metal used as money.

- a) pot b) bowl c) can d) coin

23 Some boys wore.....on their faces to frighten girls.

- a) shorts b) skirts c) masks d) shirts

24 My grandmother gave me a beautiful.....on my birthday which I can wear a round my neck.

- a) ring b) watch c) jumper d) necklace

25 My mother wears two.....on her fingers. They are expensive.

- a) rings b) watches c) scarfs d) necklaces

26 Bees and ants are small..... **WB**

- a) animals b) birds c) insects d) turtles

27 People wear sunglasses to.....their eyes from the sun.

- a) affect b) protect c) infect d) give

28 My father's mobile phone.....him a lot of money. It's very expensive.

- a) cost b) paid c) bought d) sold

29 There is aof flowers on the table next to my bed.

- a) bottle b) vase c) bag d) glass

30 The shop is very crowded today. There are many.....

- a) waiters b) customers c) sellers d) objects

31 We go to school every day.....holidays.

- a) accept b) expect c) except d) aspect

32- There was a.....in our class about how we help the environment.

- a) debate b) date c) carpet d) lamp

33.....is important for Egypt because it brings a lot of money and jobs.

- a) Infection b) illness c) Pollution d) Tourism

34 We should protect our.....places because they are very important.

- a) history b) historian c) geography d) historic

35) Some tourists are careless because they.....rubbish in historic places.

- a) drop b) make c) lend d) mix

36) Some projects in the area help.....people to find jobs easily.

- a) strange b) local c) historic d) natural

37) Some people think that tourists can.....important places.

- a) attack b) attract c) damage d) debate

38) A.....is a period of 100 years.

- a) month b) week c) decade d) century

39- I want to know what happened.....Hazem last night.

- a) to b) in c) under d) at

40- My brother works in a big.....that organises holidays.

- a) fort b) castle c) palace d) company

41- Muhammad Ali was the.....of Egypt in the past. He was the most important person.

- a) ruler b) roller c) baker d) waiter

42. This chemical helps to keepmosquitos. **WB**

- a) away b) by c) for d) in

43. Ais a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair thing. **WB**

- a) vase b) tap c) tool d) pot

44. A.....is a model of a person. **WB**
 a) figure b) tap c) coin d) pot
45. Popele used bowls to.....ingredients.
 a) repair b) mix c) do d) paint
- 46-.....are damaging many countries around the world.
 a) wars b) weddings c) birthdays d) parties
47. There areschools for deaf people who cannot hear.
 a) special b) tourist c) crowded d) ugly
48. Tourism is goodour country
 a) at b) with c) for d) to
49. I read an interestingabout tourism in a magazine
 a) debate b) report c) paper d) plan
50. You can see manyin the museum
 a) castles b) prayers c) statues d) arches

grammar

Must / mustn't

must

يجب : تدل على وجوب فعل شئ في الوقت الحاضر – اجباري أو ضروري

must + inf

- ⊗ you **must look** right and left before you cross the road.
- ⊗ They **must arrive** on time. .
- ⊗ We **must be** careful in the laboratory!

must = it is necessary/important to + inf

هام ← من الضروري/المهم ان

mustn't لا يجب : تدل على المنع أو التحريم أو عدم وجوب فعل شئ في الحاضر

mustn't + inf

- ⊗ You **mustn't talk** in the library.
- ⊗ in a museum , you **mustn't touch** he objects .
- ⊗ We **mustn't talk** to each other in the lesson

السؤال : Question

عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / No نتبع الآتي :

? تكلمة الجملة + مصدر + فاعل + must

→ Must we put the rubbish in the bin ? √- Yes, you must √- No, you mustn't

الماضي المستمر The past continuous tense

١. التكوين Form:

١- في حالة الإثبات: يتكون الماضي المستمر من (was/were + verb + ing) فاعل

➤ They **were watching** TV yesterday evening.

٢- في حالة النفي: يتكون من

I , He , She, It → **was not**

We, You, They → **weren't**

} + (v + ing).

➤ Jana **wasn't making** dinner.

They weren't swimming

٢. في حالة السؤال: يتكون من

فتبع الاتي :

عند تكوين السؤال بهل

Was + (I/he / she / It) + v + ing ?

Were + (we/you / they) + v + ing ?

E.g ➤ Was he/she (having lunch)? Yes, he/she was. No, he/she wasn't

➔ Were you watching TV ? yes, I was / No, I wasn't.

➔ Did you watch TV last night? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

عند تكوين السؤال ب كلمة استفهام :

كلمة استفهام

Was + (I/he / she / It) + v + ing ?

Were + (we/you / they) + v + ing ?

⌘ - What were they doing at 5 yesterday?

They were playing football

٢. الاستخدام Usage :

نستخدم الماضي المستمر

١- للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي في وقت معين

➤ Tarek was eating dinner at noon yesterday.

They were studying English at 8 p.m last night

٢- للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا عندما قطعه حدث آخر في الماضي.

➤ While/As I was having lunch , the phone rang

➤ While (As/ Just as/ when) I was going home, I met one of my best friends.

➤ When I returned home, mother was preparing lunch

٣. الكلمات الدالة Key words :

(all + morning, afternoon, evening, night, time), while بينما , as بينما , just as بينما , when عندما ,
طول اليوم امس between 6 and 8 , at ...o'clock yesterday , at...o'clock last, The whole/all day yesterday

لاحظ استخدام الماضي المستمر والماضي البسيط مع (when/while/As)

While /As/ When

➔ ماضى مستمر

➔ ماضى بسيط

e.g -While I was reading my book, the phone rang.

As/When we were walking into the museum , we saw some old statues

➔ ماضى بسيط

While /As/ When

➔ ماضى مستمر

my father arrived while my mother was cooking

➔ ماضى مستمر

When

➔ ماضى بسيط

my mother was cooking when my father arrived

1. Youlook right and left before you cross the road

a) must

b) mustn't

c) shouldn't

d) don't have to

2- You drink water from the river. It's not clean.

- a) doesn't have to b) have to c) has to d) mustn't
- 3 You.....turn the music up too loud; you will harm our ears.
- a) doesn't have to b) have to c) has to d) mustn't
- 4) You.....do the housework. Our mother is ill.
- a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) have
- 5 This was a nice evening. We must.....again.
- a) meet b) meeting c) met d) to meet
- 6 You.....brush your teeth three times a day. It's good for your teeth
- a) have to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must
- 7 You.....forget to do your homework regularly.
- a) must to b) must c) mustn't to d) mustn't
- 8 You.....be kind to your friends.
- a) mustn't b) must c) must never d) shouldn't
- 9 It's late. You.....never make so much noise.
- a) mustn't b) must c) shouldn't d) don't
- 10 At school, you.....listen to your teacher.
- a) have b) must c) mustn't d) has to
- 11.a You.....be home on time. Don't be late.
- a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) don't have to
- 12.This is a valuable book. you.....keep it and mustn't lose it.
- a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) haven't
- 13- The telephone rang while Tamer.....doing his homework.
- a) was b) is c) were d) are
- 14 Sanaa heard the noise.....she was watching a film.
- a) if b) as c) so d) because
- 15 We were playing tennis when Tamer.....his ankle.
- a) hurting b) hurt c) was hurting d) is hurting
16. Someone opened the door while I.....
- a) was sleeping b) was slept c) sleeping d) slept
- 17.While I was looking out of the window, it.....to rain.
- a) started b) was started c) was starting d) starting
18. As I.....for tomorrow's game, I fell down and hurt my leg.
- a) practise b) practising c) practised d) was practising
19. When I was younger, I.....pizza almost every day.
- a) eaten b) eat c) ate d) was eating
- 20.The boys didn't play because it.....
- a) rained b) was raining c) rains d) raining
- 21.What.....at 10 pm last night?
- a) were they doing b) did they do c) did they use to do d) are they doing
22. Yesterday, I a play at 10 o'clock.
- a. have watched b. was watching c. was watched d. watched
23. I was studying my lessons when the lights out.
- a. goes b. went c. were going d. gone
24. I my lunch when the phone rang.
- a. have eaten b. was eating c. has eaten d. ate
- 25) Last year, we.....to the beautiful city of Venice in Italy.
- a. were travelling b. travel c. travelled d. travels
- 26.It started to rain while they.....home.
- a) walking b) were walking c) walked d) walk
- 27.My father was watching TV when the phone.....
- a) ring b) rung c) rang d) was ringing
28. When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runnersthrough the park. **WE**
- a) run b) was running c) ran d) were running
- 29 As Karim was taking photos of the animals, hehis phone. **WE**
- a) lost b) was losing c) loses d) losing



- 30 While Mona.....tennis, she hurt her arm. **WB**
a. plays b. played c. was playing d. were playing
31. I was doing my homework when my sister.....me. **WB**
a. was calling b. calls c. called d. calling
32. Lots of birds..... in the sky as we were sitting down on the beach **WB**
a. was flying b. flew c. fly d. were flying

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1 You..... (mustn't)study hard if you want to pass your exams.
2 You mustn't..... (using) a mobile phone in class.
3 You mustn't..... (to forget) your bag and books.
4 Students and teachers must(are) polite to each other.
5.We must..... (to go) to the laboratory for our science lessons
6. People(must) throw rubbish in the street.
7 They..... (have) tea when the doorbell rang.
8 When he(arrive), we were having dinner.
9 While I(sweep) the floor , I heard a noise.
10.They..... (forget) their books yesterday.
11.It's a No parking area. you(must) park here.
12.I was doing my homework when my sister(call) me.
13.At four p.m. yesterday, I..... (do)my homework.
14.I was walking through the park when I..... (meet) Adel.
15.While I was texting my friends, the school bus..... (arrive).
16..During an exam, you..... (must)copy from the other students.
17. I(must) forget my wife's birthday, so I have to buy a card today.
18.When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runners(run)through the park
19.While Mona..... (play)tennis, she hurt her arm.

6-Write a paragraph of (90) words on

A historic place in Egypt

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

an ancient egyptian object

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 5 Helping you, helping me

Apartment = flat	شقة	stranger	غريب	Do random acts of kindness	يقوم اعمال لطف عشوائي
lucky	محظوظ	smile	ابتسامة/يتسم	Kind to	عطوف على
messy	فوضوي	tips	نصائح	Boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
lift	مصعد	thief	لص	Head teacher	مدرسة داخلية
stairs	سلالم	fantastic	رائع	polite	مؤدب
tidy	مرتب/منظم	trainers	حذاء رياضي	generous	كريم
Look after	يعتني ب	perhaps	ربما	Pick up	يلتقط
Make the bed	يرتب الفراش	princess	اميرة	Cruel to	قاسي على
Put away	يضع شيئا في مكانه	community	مجتمع / جماعة	disabled	معاق
Take out	يخرج	beggar	شحات	businesswoman	سيدة اعمال
Wash up	يفسل الاطباق	servant	خادم	donation	تبرع
advertisement	اعلان	behave	يتصرف	Give away	يتبرع
kindness	طيبة/عطف	donation	تبرع	share	يقاسم او يشارك
random	عشوائي	donate	يتبرع	laboratory	معمل
helpful	معاون/مساعد	Difficult for	صعب ل	sailor	بحار
blog	مدونة الكترونية	Surprised about	مندهش بشأن	Social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

2- Complete the following dialogue:

1-Boody : Hello, Roaa. How are you?

Roaa : Hi, Boody. I'm fine.

Boody : What jobs do you (1).....to do at home?

Roaa : I have to (2).....lunch.

Boody : (3).....you have to clean the floor?

Roaa : No. My sister cleans it.

Boody : Does your brother have to walk to school?

Roaa : No, he (4).....He goes by bike.

Boody : What about you?

Roaa : I (5).....the bus.

2.Nasser : Do you have to study this evening, Omar?

Omar : Yes, 1(1).....

Nasser : Which subject do you (2).....to study?

Omar : Geography! I have a geography test tomorrow.

Nasser : What (3).....your brother? Does he have to study, too?

Omar : No, he doesn't.

Nasser : What does he have to do then?

Omar : He (4).....to tidy up his bedroom; it's really messy.

Nasser : It's nearly the end of break. Where do we have (5)..... go for the next lesson?

3. Rahma Good morning, Haneen?

Haneen Good morning, Rahma?

Rahma Where do you (1).....?

Haneen I work for a charity which looks (2).....sick animals.

Rahma Who can help you?

Haneen People donate (3).....to the charity to buy food for the animals.

Rahma What kinds of animals do you help?

Haneen We help animals such as (4).....and camels.

Rahma I wish you good luck.

Haneen (5).....you very much.

4. Manal : I m going to travel to London next month.

Hanaa : That's (1).....news!

Manal : What do you think I should see in London first?

Hanaa : Historic places, I think. You (2).....go to the House of Parliament and the National Gallery.

Manal : And what about the British Museum?

Hanaa : Oh, yes. You (3).....go there certainly.

Manal : I'll go to the museum in the afternoon.

Hanaa : That's not good. You (4).....to be there early.

Manal : Why (5).....I have to go early?

5. Elham : Manal, what do you think we should do?

Manal : I don't know. (1).....watch TV.

Elham : That's a (2).....idea. We're going shopping later, so I think you should rest for a while.

Manal : I don't think I want to go anywhere.

Elham : What do you (3).....? I thought you said we were going shopping.

Manal : I know, but I changed my mind. I'm too tired.

Elham : Well, when (4).....you think we'll go?

Manal : Maybe tonight.

Elham : OK, (5).....I use your phone?

6. Malak . I feel that famous people should work for a charity at the weekend.

Rawia . I m (1).....sure. Some of them work very hard.

Malak : What do you think they should do?

Rawia . I think it would be (2)..... they gave some money to a charity.

Malak . I (3).....that it's important for them to donate money.

Rawia : That's exactly what I think.

Malak . But I also (4).....it's important to work for the charity, too.

Rawia : OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.

Malak : I see what you (5).....Perhaps they can help for a day or two in their holidays.

Rawia : Good idea.

3-Read the following , then answer the questions :

Mrs Saleh had two children. Samy was seven years old, and his sister Nora was four. Samy went to school, but Nora did not. When Samy was at home, he often played with Nora while their mother was cooking or washing or cleaning. Mrs Saleh was usually free to do her work quietly because Samy was very nice to his small sister.

One Friday morning, the two children were playing in the garden while their

mother was cooking lunch. They were quite happy until Nora suddenly began to cry and ran into the kitchen to her mother. Mrs Saleh stopped cooking and said, "Why are you crying, Nora? Samy broke my toy," Nora answered, crying more loudly." How did he break it?" her mother asked. Nora stopped crying, but did not answer for a few seconds. Then she said, "I hit him on the head with it."

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1-Give a suitable title to the passage.
- 2 Why was Mrs Saleh usually free to do her work quietly?.....
- 3 How old was Samy's sister?.....

B) Choose the correct answer:

4The underlined word "loudly" means.....

- a) calmly b) noisily c) kindly d) quietly

5 When Nora cried, her mother was in the.....

- a) garden b) bedroom c) kitchen d) school

6 The toy was.....

- a) repaired b) cleaned c) broken d) old

2.Next Wednesday Abeer is going to have her birthday party . She will be twelve years old . She is going to invite Huda and Ranaa and all her other friends . It will be a nice party . Abeer and her mother are working hard. They are making new dresses for the party.

On Monday , they will go to the shops by bus to buy food for the party . They will buy bread, cakes and sweets . Then , Abeer's mother will cook . The girls will be hungry , so there must be a lot of food . Abeer has got a book about games for parties . She is reading the book and she will choose some games . She will choose the best games in the book.

A) Answer these questions :

1. When was Abeer born?
2. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?.....
3. How will Abeer and her mother will go shopping ?.....

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. Abeer and her mother will go shopping..... .

- a) next Wednesday b) today c) on Monday d) on Sunday

5. Abeer's mother must have a lot of food because

- a) the girls will be hungry. b) the girls will make new dresses
c) the family will be hungry d) all Abeer's friends will be happy

6. Abeer is for the party.

- a) cooking food for the party b) reading a book about games
c) buying some dresses d) singing and dancing

3.it was a rainy day in January, the farmers were in their fields. A boy ran towards them shouting for help. He told them that the river was coming up and they were in danger. They didn't believe him because he was just a little boy. An hour later, the high water in the river came over the land. The farmers now knew that the boy's words were true. They tried to save their fields and houses, but they couldn't control the water of the river. They had to run away. They were sad because they lost both their crops and houses. In the afternoon, some engineers came with a number of machines and dug a canal from the river. Some machines were also used to pump the water out of the fields.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1.Why was the boy shouting?.....

2. Which season was it?.....
3. Why did the engineers come?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to.....
a) fields b) machines c) engineers d) farmers
5. The farmers were sad because they lost.....
a) their pumps b) their crop c) machines d) their children
6. The farmers didn't believe the boy because he was.....
a) happy b) clever c) liar d) little

4. We don't know who made tea for the first time, but we have heard and read many stories about that. Nearly five thousand years ago, the king of China boiled his drinking water under a tree. Some of the leaves fell into the pot. When he drank the water, he liked the taste very much. He thought that the taste came from the leaves of the tree. People drink tea because they think it helps them stay awake for a long time. We all know that tea is grown in China and India. Many People like to drink tea with milk. Others like to have it with lemon when they feel tired. People usually have tea in the morning and after lunch.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do people drink tea?.....
2. When do people usually drink tea?.....
3. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "Nearly" means.....
a) opposite b) almost c) nearby d) far
5. People usually drink tea with.....when they are tired.
a) milk b) orange c) lemon d) leaves
6. Tea is grown in.....
a) Japan b) China c) India d) both b and c

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They gave the footballer a test to check his health. **WB**
a) leveling b) random c) simple d) difficult
2. We all remember my grandfather's, he always helped us when we were children **WB**
a) cruelty b) advice c) kindness d) ugliness
3. This book is, you should read it. **WB**
a) boring b) bad c) useless d) fantastic
4. Adam knew everyone in the village, so he was surprised when a walked into his shop. **WB**
a) neighbour b) relative c) stranger d) friend
5. I'm very.....today because I found a good job and met my old best friend.
a) messy b) lazy c) tidy d) lucky
6. Students..... turns to answer questions.
a) plan b) do c) make d) take
7. My sister likes helping mum to..... the cooking.
a) do b) make c) have d) pay
8. He lives on the 17th floor. He always takes the.....
a) steps b) ladder c) lift d) plane
9. I usuallymy baby sister when my parents are away.
a) look after b) wash up c) tidy up d) look up
10. You should..... your things after using them.
a) take out b) look after c) put away d) give up

11. My mother always takes out the rubbish when the bin is...
a) full b) empty c) lazy d) tidy
12. I bought a lovely.....for my mother to put her money in.
a) ring b) scarf c) necklace d) purse
13. you should be kind strangers .
a) at b) to c) for d) with
15. It's friendly to meet people with a.....
a) smile b) sadness c) damage d) cry
16. Our children don't often talk to.....
a) runners b) waiters c) strangers d) designers
17. To be good at English, you should.....it.
a) recommend b) practise c) tell d) play
18. I recommend you watch that film. It's.....
a) amazed b) ugly c) fantastic d) boring
19. When you are on a bus, you should.....your seat to older people.
a) take b) give c) touch d) sell
20. Our apartment isthe fifth floor.
a) in b) from c) on d) between
21. These are theyou should follow to be fit.
a) tubes b) tips c) lips d) taps
22. Everyone wants to make the world for them.
a) bad b) worse c) better d) worst
23. People who can't walk, usually have a/an.....to help them.
a) armchair b) seat c) sofa d) wheelchair
24. You show.....when you do things to help others and show you care about them.
a) kindness b) sadness c) carelessness d) laziness
25. The.....goes to prison for taking things that don't belong to him.
a) police b) thief c) volunteer d) charity
26. Players should wear the best.....when they play to help them run.
a) glasses b) trainers c) jeans d) jackets
27. I saw a.....man who cannot walk and uses a wheelchair.
a) messy b) generous c) clever d) disabled
28. The rich help poor people a lot when they.....money to charities.
a) sell b) borrow c) donate d) lose
29. A.....school is a school where students study and live all the time.
a) boarding b) board c) broad d) abroad
30. Children like to go to the zoo and.....animals there.
a) drive b) play c) feed d) eat
31. A.....is the daughter of the king or queen.
a) prince b) princess c) servant d) ruler
32. Be careful! You're a small boy. You can't.....this heavy bag alone.
a) stop b) leave c) lift d) left
33. The.....means people who live in a certain area in a city or a town.
a) community b) distance c) country d) village
34. We shouldn't be.....to animals.
a) kind b) polite c) tidy d) cruel
35. Nowadays there are many.....in most streets who ask for money.
a) servants b) beggars c) sellers d) actors
36. My grandfather always gives us money and presents. He is..
a) lucky b) tidy c) clever d) generous
37. A is a person who works in houses.
a) servant b) headteacher c) beggar d) princess
38. A kind person is someone whowell.
a) sleeps b) plays c) behaves d) travels
39. I usually..... school on time.

- a) arrive b) get c) go d) reach
40. The baker looked..... when Sara gave all cakes to the beggar.
- a) surprise b) surprising c) surprised d) surprises
41. always ask people for money .
- a) Tourists b) Bakers c) Masters d) Beggars
42. My mother is an excellent cook. She cooks.....food.
- a) generous b) disabled c) delicious d) ugly
- 43..... is to give something useful to a person or charity that needs help.
- a) borrow b) donate c) lift d) steal
44. My aunt is a.....She has a big company.
- a) teacher b) baker c) businesswoman d)secretary
- 45 A.....is the person who fights fires.
- a) Pilot b) sailor c) writer d) firefighter
46. You should show your.....before leaving a country.
- a) report b) blog c) passport d) photo
- 47.A.....is the person who works at airports.
- a) pilot b) sailor c) writer d) firefighter
48. We should put rubbish in.....
- a) pots b) bins c) bowls d) bottles
49. A.....is something that women use to put their money in.
- a) suitcase b) basket c) purse d) tool
50. A.....is the person who works on a boat.
- a) teacher b) sailor c) doctor d) pilot
51. A.....is something that takes you to the top of a building, without using the stairs.
- a) roof b) wall c) ladder d) lift
52. Teenagers shouldn't spend too much time on.....media.
- a) society b) social c) sociable d) community
- 53.My little brother likes catching fish. He wants to be a.....
- a) nurse b) fisherman c) waiter d) firefighter
54. This is the.....that my family donates money to.
- a) school b) market c) shop d) charity
55. We've got science in the
- a) cinema b) restaurant c) cafe d) laboratory
- 56.This charity has got a lot of.....from rich people.
- a) pollution b) equipment c) donation d) development
57. How much time did you spend.....this project?
- a) at b) in c) of d) on
58. My mother always.....the toys among my little brothers.
- a) puts b) tidies c) washes d)shares
59. My little brother gave.....his toys to a charity.
- a) away b) up c) into d) back

Grammar

Necessity and obligation

الضرورة والالتزام

Present Necessity

الضرورة في المضارع

تستخدم have/has to قاعدة او قانون او اشيء مفروضة علينا ولا خيار لنا فيها

I , you , we , they → have to + inf.
he , she , it → has to

→ We have to go to school on time

❖ She has to get a passport to travel to London. We have to go to school five days a week.

❖ All children in Egypt have to go to school from the age of six to fifteen.

lack of Present Necessity

نقص الضرورة فى المضارع

❖ تُعبر عن عدم الضرورة لفعل شىء فى المضارع (لا داعى لفعل الشىء ويمكن أن تفعله إذا أردت)

I , you , we , they → { don't have to + inf.
he , she , it → { doesn't have to + inf.

❖ She doesn't have to hurry. She isn't late for school.

I don't have to do my homework today. We don't have to go to school on Saturdays

Do /Does + فاعل + مصدر ؟

Yes / No تتبع الاتى :

⊗ Do you have to get up at seven o'clock? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

→ Does she have to eat breakfast? Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

عند تكوين السؤال ب أداة استفهام :

مصدر + have to + فاعل + Do /Does + كلمة استفهام

⊙ When do we have to finish our homework?

⊙ Why does she have to go now?

٢- نستخدم should / shouldn't + inf. للنصيحة (advice)

← نستخدم should بمعنى يجب ان للتحدث عن اشيء من الجيد ان نفعلها.

Ex-You should go now The bus goes in ten minutes.

→ Tourists should wear sun cream when it s very hot .

← نستخدم shouldn't بمعنى لا يجب ان للتحدث عن اشيء ليس من الجيد ان نفعلها.

*you shouldn't watch too much television.

→ You shouldn't walk too much in the sun.

السؤال Question

Yes / No تتبع الاتى :

Should + فاعل + مصدر + تكملة الجملة ؟

→ should I go now?

√- Yes, you should

√- No, you shouldn't

عند تكوين السؤال ب أداة استفهام :

؟ تكملة الجملة + مصدر + فاعل + should + كلمة استفهام

√-when should we go to the beach?

-- what should I do?

Defining relative Clauses ضمائر الوصل المحددة

Who – Which – That – Where

(who – that)

الذى – التى : تستخدم مع العاقل

→ Miss Amal is the teacher who/that teaches us science.

→ The stadium has 75,000 seats for people who/that want to watch sports.

لاحظ - عند استخدام comma قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل لا نستخدم that فى هذا النوع.

→ My mother, who is standing beside me, is very kind.

→ Mr Zaki, who lives next door, is a scientist.

(which – that)

الذى – التى : تستخدم مع غير العاقل (أشياء وحيوانات)

→ That's the horse which/that won the competition.

☎ What's the name of the book which you are reading?

✂ Elephants, which live for around 45 years, are found in Africa.

(where)

حيث : تستخدم مع المكان (وهى تعبر عن مكان او ما بداخله)

✂ This is the house where Grandfather lived.

▶ This is the village where my father was born.

▶ There is also a stadium Where you can watch horse riding .

1- لاحظ اذا وجد حرف مع المكان فاننا نستخدم which وليس where

→ → That is the flat which we live in

→ the house which they live in is very old.

2- لاحظ : نستخدم (which) مع المكان إذا جاء بعدها فعل وليس فاعل (او كانت جملة لتعريف المكان) واعطاء معلومة عنه.

☎ This is the school which was built last year.

* Cairo International Stadium is in Nasr City, which is in the northeast of Cairo

→ this is the house which my father bought last year

ملاحظات هامة للتشور او صحح الخطا

1.	للعقل	نختار who أو that
2.	لغير العقل	نختار which أو that
3.	لمكان	يحدث شئ بداخله نختار where ويتبعها فاعل وفعل مع عدم وجود حرف الجر قبله أو فى نهاية الجملة ، وفى حالة وجود حرف الجر نختار which
4.	لمكان	لم يذكر حدث يتم داخله نختار which ويتبعها فاعل وفعل.
5.	لمكان	جاء بعده فعل مباشرة بدون فاعل نختار which

1. My father get up at six o'clock every day to go to work . **SB**

a) has to b) have to c) doesn't have to d) don't have to

2. When you get on the bus, you buy a ticket. **SB**

a) have to b) has to c) don't have to d) doesn't have to

3. At the weekends, I get up early. I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. **SB**

a) have to b) hast to c) don't have to d) doesn't have to

4. Everyonedo a random act of kindness sometimes. **WB**

a) should b) shouldn't c) have to d) has to

5. You pass your exams to go to university. **WB**

a) should b) don't have to c) have to d) doesn't have to

6. You do your homework at the same time everyday. **WB**

a) shouldn't b) don't have to c) have to d) has to

7. You show your passport when you leave the country. **WB**

a) have to b) has to c) shouldn't d) needn't

8- We.....cook more; there's enough food.

- a) have to b) don't have to c) has to d) should

9- I don't like that uniform, but I.....wear it at work.

- a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) have to d) don't have to

10 It's cold. You.....wear your jacket.

- a) shouldn't b) should c) don't have to d) mustn't

11- She's always tired. She.....go to bed late every night.

- a) shouldn't b) should c) have to d) don't have to

12 You.....remember to close the windows when you leave the house.

- a) mustn't b) don't have to c) should d) has to

13.You.....eat fast food every day. It's very bad for you.

- a) must b) have to c) don't have to d) shouldn't

14. I.....wear glasses because I can't see very well.

- a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have to d) shouldn't

15.-Hany go to school on time.

- a) don't have to b) have to c) has to d) doesn't have

16.- It is cloudy today, so we.....take our sunglasses.

- a) don't have to b) not have to c) don't have d) have not to

17-good students.....to take private lessons.

- a-won't b-haven't c-shouldn't d-don't have

18-Sara have to get up early?

- a-Are b-Is c- Do d-Does

19- What game do you have.....?

- a-practise b-practising c- to practise d-practise

20.You.....play football here. It's dangerous.

- a) have to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must

21- We bought a flat..... is near the school.

- a- who b- which c- where d- what

22- What's the name of the book.....you are reading?

- a- who b- which c- where d- what

23- The people..... live next door are very friendly.

- a- who b- which c- where d- whom

24- This is the village.....my father was born.

- a- who b- which c- where d- what

25- Please show me the photos.....you took on Sports Day.

- a- who b- which c- where d- what

26-Tennis is a game..... many people enjoy.

- a- who b- which c- where d- what

27- That's the sports clubmy brother plays basketball.

- a- who b- which c- where d- that

28- That is the shopMagda bought her jumper.

- a- who b- which c- that d- where

29-Alexandria is the city.....we like most.

- a- who b- which c- when d- where

30-Mr Ali,.....is a teacher, is very kind and helpful.

- a- who b- which c- where d- that

31- Arabic is a language..... is spoken in many countries.

- a- who b- which c- where d- what

32- this is the house.....my father bought last year.

- a- who b- which c- where d- what

33. This is the place..... my professor had the accident.

- a. where b. when c. who d. which

34. We arrived at a nice beach,.....we could swim and sit in the sun.

- a) who b) which c)what d) where

35 A waiter is a man.....serves drinks and food in a restaurant.

- a) who

b)when

c) whose

d) which
36. Thank you very much for your e-mail.....was very interesting.
- a) what

b)who

c) where

d)that
37. We went to the mosque.....is in the middle of the square.
- a)which

b) where

c)who

d) whose

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1 At our school we.....(haven't to) wear a uniform.
- 2-(Does) the boys have to get up early?
- 3- You(doesn't)have to shout. I can hear you.
- 4- We.....(has to) leave now or we ll miss the plane.
- 5- You.....(have to) go to school today. It s Friday.
- 6- We.....(not have) to go to school tomorrow because it's a holiday.
- 7.I don't know what I.....(shouldn't) do with my old clothes.
8. You have to.....(wore) special clothes for your sports class
- 9.She.....(have to) show her mother her homework.
- 10- This is the place.....(who) I visited last week.
- 11- Football is a sport.....(where) I like.
- 12- A good friend is someone.....(which) helps others.
- 13- Cairo is the city(who) is crowded.
- 14- I gave the shoes..... (who)are too small for me to my cousin.
- 15-That's the man.....(which) bought our old car.
- 16-The cafe..... (where) I meet my friends sells delicious ice-cream.
- 17-I saw the villa..... (who) my father bought.
- 18-I can't find the pen..... (where) I bought.
- 19 At the zoo, there is a parrot.....(where) can talk to the people.
20. Benha is the city.....(which) I was born.
21. Did you see the car..... (who) Adel bought?
- 22.I need someone..... (which) can fix my washing machine.
- 23.Mr Sabri's the teacher (Where) taught my sister.

Random acts of kindness

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A story you read

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Helping People

Unit 6 Different environments

Air pollution	تلوث الهواء	seat	مقعد	Line graph	رسم بياني خطي
canal	قناة	Warn (ed)	يحذر	Melt (ed)	ينصهر/يذوب
drought	جفاف	Water pollution	تلوث الماء	presentation	عرض تقديمي
electric	كهربى	Bar chart	رسم بياني شريطي	recycling	اعادة التدوير
environment	البيئة	cause	يسبب	serious	جاد/خطير
flood	فيضان	Changing world	العالم المتغير	temperature	درجة الحرارة
mountain	جبل	Climate change	التغير المناخي	axis	محور
report	تقرير	electricity	الكهرباء	weather	الطقس
rubbish	قمامة	Green energy	الطاقة النظيفة		
Black honey	عسل اسود	Pray (ed)	يصلى	Protect (ed)	يحمى
canal	قناة مائية	title	عنوان (كتاب)	Respect (ed)	يحترم
cotton	قطن	east	شرق	Scuba diving	رياضة الغطس
delicious	لذيذ	north	شمال	wildlife	الحياة البرية
Introduce (d)	يقدم	south	جنوب	The Red sea coast	ساحل البحر الاحمر
Locate (d)	يقع	west	غرب	sweets	حلوى
monuments	اثار	Damage (d)	يتلف/يدمر	Produce (d)	ينتج
mosque	مسجد	podcast	بث اذاعي	position	مكانة/موقع
diagram	رسم بياني	Aim to	يهدف الى	including	متضمنا/مشملا على
Burn(burnt)	يحرق	City centre	وسط المدينة	remind	يذكر
Reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام	Collect	يجمع	riverbank	ضفة النهر
solution	حل	event	حدث	tonnes	اطنان
Solve (d)	يحل	global	عالمى	gas	غاز
Vote (d)	يصوت	importance	اهمية	Lead to	يؤدى الى
coloured	ملون	volunteer	متطوع	idea	فكرة

2- Complete the following dialogue:

1. Ali : Hello, Eman. How are you?

Eman : Fine.

Ali : Which is (1)..... the laptop or the computer?

Eman : The (2).....is bigger.

Ali : Is the screen on the computer the same as the one on the laptop?

Eman : No, the screen of the computer is not (3).....small as the laptop.

Ali : What (4).....the price?

Eman : The price is the same. The laptop is similar to the computer in price.

Ali : Which is heavier?

Eman : (5).....

2. Adel : Where do you live?

Ibrahim : I (1)..... in Tanta.

Adel : Where is Tanta located?

Ibrahim : It's (2).....in the north of Egypt.

Adel : What is it known for?

Ibrahim : It's known for its (3).....sweets.

Adel : How can I go there?

Ibrahim : You can go there by bus or by (4).....

Adel : Tanta is a very beautiful city.

Ibrahim : (5)....., it is.

3. Hala : Where did you go on holiday last year?

Nora : I went to Alexandria.

Hala : Where did you (1).....?

Nora : I stayed in my uncle's flat.

Hala : (2).....did you travel there?

Nora : I travelled (3).....train.

Hala : Did you (4).....in the sea?

Nora : Yes, I did.

Hala : What did you eat there?

Nora : I usually (5).....fish when I was there.

4. Aya : The problem is that we all use too much water.

Reem : I (1).....We should do something about that.

Aya : Certainly. We could use less water.

Reem : That's (2).....So, how can we use less water?

Aya : Well, (3).....don't we try recycling water?

Reem : Sorry, I don't know what you mean.

Aya : We could use water twice.

Reem : (4).....could we do that?

Aya : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.

Reem : That's an interesting (5).....!The plants would like that.

5. Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin.

Leila : What's the problem with that?

Dina :The(1).....is that we use too many of them.

Leila : What can we do with that problem?

Dina: We (2).....stop people using them.

Leila: How can we stop people using them?

Dina: Why (3).....we ask people to use them again?

Leila: (4).....could we do that?

Dina: People could take the bottles home, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

Leila: (5).....an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

6.Wafaa : I like your new shoes. What are they made of?

Tasnem -.They are made of (1).....

Wafaa : When did you (2).....them?

Tasnem: I bought them last week.

Wafaa : Who bought them for you?

Tasnem: My (3).....

Wafaa : (4).....?

Tasnem: It was my birthday.

Wafaa : Great. Can you come with me to buy a pair for me?

Tasnem: (5).....

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

1.A nature reserve is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected. Nature reserves may be built by the government in some countries, or by private landowners.

There are 30 nature reserves in Egypt which cover 12% of Egyptian land. Those nature reserves were built to protect the Egyptian nature. Egypt announced a plan to build 40 nature reserves from 1997 to 2017, to help protect the natural resources and the culture and history of those areas. The largest nature reserve in Egypt is Gebel Elba (35,600 square kilometres) in the southeast, on the Red Sea coast.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about?.....

2. What is a nature reserve?.....

3. Why do you think Egypt planned to build more nature reserves?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Who can build nature reserves around the world?

a) Governments b) Private landowners c) Universities d) Both a and b.

5. The largest nature reserve in Egypt is.....

a) on the Nile b) on the Red Sea coast
c) on the Mediterranean coast d) on the ocean

6. Nature reserves cover about.....of Egyptian land.

a) 10% b)20% c)25% d) 12%

2.I like to collect fossils. It's an interesting hobby, although it is not always easy to find them. The first thing you have to do is to find the right place. I know a place in the desert where there are many fossils. When I see a fossil, first I look carefully to see if it was a plant or a small animal. After that, I put the fossil in a small bag. Then, I take it home. The next step, is deciding where to put the fossil. I group the fossils of animals and plants and keep them in different boxes. **Finally**, I find out the name of the animal or plant and write it in my

notebook.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think the writer could keep his fossils at home ?.....
2. What does the writer do in his notebook ?.....
3. What's the best title of this passage ?.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to a
a fossil b box c. notebook d. bag
5. There are many fossils in the.....
a desert b field c.farm d.school
6. The underlined word 'finally' means.....
a at last b. first c. usually d.sometimes

3.Ahmed and Soha were in the dinning room and their parents were at work. Soha was doing her homework. They thought their sister Salma was playing with her toys. Soha saw some water. It was coming through the floor. Ahmed and Soha went to the bathroom. They found Salma. She was playing with her toys. There was a lot of water on the bathroom floor and it was running into the dinning room. They talked about the water and decided to dry the floor. They used some of their father's old newspapers. Ahmed decided to phone his mother and father and tell them about the water.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where was Salma playing with her toys?.....
- 2.How did Ahmed and Soha dry the floor?.....
- 3 .How many persons are there in the family?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the.....
a) floor b) vapour c) dinning room d) water
5. While Ahmed and Soha were in the dinning room, their parents were at.....
a) school b) home c) work d) bedroom
6. There was a lot of water on the.....floor.
a) bedroom b) dining room c) hall d) kitchen

4-choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1. Please take your home; do not leave it in the park. **WB**
a) rubbish b) grass c) jewellery d) music
2. It was raining for days and then there was a....., so people used boats to leave their houses! **WB**
a) flood b) storm c) drought d) storm
3. There are a lot of cars in the city so the air.....is very bad. **WB**
a) polluting b) pollute c) polluted d) pollution
4. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a..... **WB**
a) flood b) storm c) drought d) storm
5. Not many fish live in the river because it is very..... **WB**
a) polluting b) pollute c) polluted d) pollution
6. Bikes are a/ anform of transport because they use no fuel. **WB**
a) fuel b) green c) oil d) petrol
7. Drier weather is.....the ice on the top of the mountains.
a) sinking b) trying c) leaving d) melting
- 8 The.....is getting higher because the climate is changing.
a) environment b) mark c) temperature d) mountain
- 9 Climate change can cause ice on tops of mountains to.....
a) dry b) melt c) snow d) rain
- 10 Many countries try.....things to help the environment.
a) recycling b) cycling c) damaging d) throwing

- 11.....energy doesn't damage the environment. It's good for it.
a) Fuel b) Green c) Oil d) Petrol
12. Don't leave your.....here. You should take it to the nearest bin.
a) rubbish b) children c) tools d) experiments
- 13 People think that beaches are.....because people go there and forget their worries.
a) relax b) relaxed c) relaxing d) relaxation
14. The.....in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.
a) climate b) weather c) whether d) air
15. It s raining heavily this week. I think there will be a serious.
a) drought b) fire c) flood d) sinking
- 16.....cars are better than usual cars. They don't pollute the environment.
a) Electricity b) Electrical c) Electric d) Electrician
17. Every activity people do can damage or help the.....we live in.
a) environment b) experiment c) laboratory d) equipment
18. Some countries have serious.....because there isn't any rain for a long time.
a) emergency b) accidents c) floods d) droughts
19. Egypt has a warm.....all over the year.
a) climate b) weather c) air d) wind
20. This week, the.....is going to be very hot.
a) storm b) weather c) breeze d) climate
21. More.....mean worse fires than ever before.
a) floods b) floats c) droughts d) draughts
22. water.....became much more worse than the last ten years.
a) pollution b) population c) station d) decision
23. Polluted food.....you to become ill or sick.
a) makes b) spends c) feels d) causes
24. Droughts are asas floods.
a) safe b) amazing c) serious d) relaxing
25. My home town is.....on the coast. It's in the south-east.
a) closed b) positioned c) located d) lied
26. Mohamed Salah, the famous sports person, is.....for his kindness.
a) opened b) known c) closed d) spent
27. My computer is.....to the internet, so I search easily for anything I want.
a) contacted b) communicated c) tied d) connected
28. Many people like to visit Port Said to.....fish.
a) feed b) spend c) catch d) hold
29. I visited Al-Ahmadi Mosque in Tanta and.....in it.
a) dived b) fished c) prayed d) played
30. Egypt has wonderful ancient.....which tourists like to visit.
a) monuments b) experiments c) developments d) movements
31. Most fruit and vegetables are.....in the local area.
a) fed b) grown c) lived d) located
32. Minya has delicious black.....made from sugar.
a) honey b) rose c) flower d) cotton
33. Bread is made from.....
a) cotton b) potatoes e) sugar d) wheat
34. A..... is a long area of water made for ships or boats. **WB**
a) coast b) park c) canal d) beach
35.is a plant used for making clothes. **WB**
a) Cotton b) Sugar c) Wheat d) Flower
36. MrTaha is famous for his.....stories. We all laugh a lot when we hear them
a) boring b) ugly c) expensive d) funny
- 37.....should look after the environment when they visit a country.
a) Tourism b) Tourists c) Guides d) Owners
- 38 Farmers plant a lot of orange trees.....the river.

- a) a long b) along c) long d) longer
39. Owners of hotels should.....the environment.
- a) protect b) attack c) take d) damage
40. The hotel is located.....a lovely beach.
- a) on b) out c) of d) in
41. The few turtles on the beach are in danger. As a..... the hotel is helping them.
- a) cause b) result c) reason d) mark
42. Workers on the boats.....that coral reefs are damaged by scuba divers.
- a) believe b) respect c) protect d) collect
43. We should stop tourists.....damaging the environment.
- a) to b) from c) at d) by
44. Tourists,.....around the world, visit the Red Sea every year.
- a) to b) from c) at d) by
45. My father always asks us to....suggestions about how to spend the weekend.
- a) make b) buy c) take d) borrow
46. Adults are the people who are able to.....and choose the person they want.
- a) vote b) sound c) avoid d) voice
47. My mother always tells me how to.....my problems alone.
- a) attack b) kill c) solve d) collect
48. My class decided that we could.....bottles to recycle them.
- a) drop b) throw c) attract d) collect
- 49.....is the way we reuse old things to become new again.
- a) Cycling b) Recycling c) Throwing d) Dropping
50. Climate change is a.....problem that we should care about.
- a) community b) national c) local d) global
51. People in my local area decided to clean up the...to reduce water pollution.
- a) garden b) Park c) riverbank d) street
52. My mother always advises me to be careful.....my money.
- a) at b) with c) under d) to
53. Rubbish in the river.....the wildlife.
- a) stores b) damages c) protects d) produces
54. When there is too much smoke coming out from factories, it..... air pollution.
- a) causes b) stops c) protects d) saves
55. The price of the room in this hotel is 500 pounds a night.....breakfast.
- a) introducing b) paying c) including d) producing
56. Most big shops and supermarkets are found in the city.....
- a) corner b) centre c) border d) wall
- 57 My mother often.....me to get my school bag ready before I sleep.
- a) reminds b) remembers c) writes d) shows

grammar

Comparative and superlative adjectives

١. الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسماً ، ولها نفس الشكل (التكوين) في المفرد والجمع ، والصفات يمكن أن تسبق الاسم وتأتي بعده ويكون قبلها (**v to be**) :

→ The new dress. → The dress is new .

→ Strong boys. → They are strong.

→ Ahmed is a careful driver. → The weather is hot

٢. لا تتغير الصفة سواء كان الموصوف مفرداً او جمعا/ مذكرا/ مؤنثا

→ Huda is tall.

→ Amira and Doha are tall.

→ Samy is short

→ Nady and Hany are short

٣- تأتي الصفة بعد هذه الأفعال بمعنى يصبح (be - get - become - go - grow - turn)

The food went bad.

He grows angry.

The sea turned rough.

٤- إذا جاءت هذه الأفعال بمعنى يبدو يأتي بعدها صفة (look - seem - appear - sound)

He looks happy

Your job sounds really interesting.

You seem very quiet today

وتنقسم الصفة الى

Short adjectives (one syllable) صفات قصيرة

صفة + er + than

١- عند المقارنة بين اثنين للصفات القصيرة التي تتكون من مقطع واحد نستخدم :

the + صفة + est

٢- عند المقارنة بين اكثر من اثنين للصفات القصيرة نستخدم :

Adjective الصفة	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
صفة	صفة + er than	The + صفة + est
Tall	Taller than	The tallest
fast	Faster than	The fastest
old	older than	the oldest
high	higher than	The highest
safe	safer than	the safest
cheap	cheaper than	The cheapest
quiet	quieter than	the quietest

Ex- early mobiles are heavier than today's phones.

→ the plane is faster than the train.

↔ today's phones are the easiest to carry around

Longer adjectives (with two or more syllables) صفات طويلة

١- عند المقارنة بين اثنين للصفات الطويلة التي تتكون من اكثر من مقطع نستخدم :

more/less + صفة + than

٢- عند المقارنة بين اكثر من اثنين للصفات الطويلة نستخدم :

the most/least + صفة

Adjective الصفة	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
صفة	More + صفة + than less + صفة + than	The + most + صفة The + least + صفة
popular	More popular than	The most popular
expensive	More expensive than	The most expensive
dangerous	More dangerous than	The most dangerous

difficult	More difficult than	The most difficult
beautiful	More beautiful than	The most beautiful

Ex- This computer is less/more expensive than that one.

→→A train is more comfortable than a bus..

→→For some people, speaking on a mobile phone is the least important of its uses!

The lion is the most dangerous animal in the forest .

→This is the most expensive dress in the shop .

لاحظ

لا تستخدم the قبل صيغة التفضيل بعد s الملكية او صفات الملكية

Ahmed shawky was one of Egypt's most famous poets

Irregular adjectives صفات شاذة تحفظ

Adjective الصفة	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
good	better than	the best
bad	worse than	the worst
little	less than	the least
many / much	more than	the most
Far بعيد (مسافة)	further than	the furthest

♦ في حالة التساوي في الصفة نستخدم:

as + صفة + as

♦ Samy is as tall as Ali

♦ في حالة النفي نستخدم:

not as / so + صفة + as

◀ Heba isn't as/so old as Aya.

Present simple passive المضارع البسيط في المجهول

المبنى للمجهول هو الجملة التي تبدأ فيها بالمفعول فربما لا نعرف من الفاعل أو لا نريد ذكره أو معروف جدا

* The farmer grows vegetables and fruits. (مبني للمعلوم)

* vegetables and fruits are grown by the farmer. (مبني للمجهول)

١- التكوين Form:

مفعول + am / is / are + P.P + by + noun

Ex- spring is celebrated in different ways all over the world.

⇒ oranges are grown in hot countries.

في حالة النفي

isn't / aren't + pp + مفعول به

Comic film isn't watched by Amira

٢. السؤال Question

Am/is /are + مفعول + p.p ?

Ex- Is snow formed in the sky ?

→ Is evaporation caused by the sun? Yes, it is

Ex- Are special foods eaten at the festival ? yes, they are

Am/is /are + مفعول + أداة استفهام

Ex- How is rain made?

★ ►► What are doors made of ?

►► Doors are made of wood

* Where is rice grown? It's grown in India.

1. Alexandria in the north of Egypt. **SB**

a) located b) is locating c) is located d) locates

2. The farmers around heremany vegetables. **SB**

a) growing b) are grown c) grow d) is growing

3. The museumby lots of people every year. **SB**

a) is visiting b) are visited c) visits d) is visited

4. The city is for its beautiful buildings. **SB**

a) is known b) knows c) is knowing d) knew

5. Lots of cotton in the area. **SB**

a) are grown b) is grown c) grew d) grows

6. Many fish in the sea near Port Said. **SB**

a) caught b) is caught c) are caught d) catch

7. Recycling isas using less electricity for the environment. **SB**

a) more important b) most important c) so important d) as beautiful

8. Mount Kenya is not as highMount Kilimanjaro. **SB**

a) as b) than c) to d) so

9. This book is bad, but the other book is **SB**

a) worse b) worst c) more worse d) badly

10. This month wasthan last month because we had some big storms. **SB**

a) wet b) more wetter c) the wettest d) wetter

11. Lying on a beach isthan working in the city. **SB**

a- relaxing b- most relaxing c- more relaxing d- as relaxing

12. Plastic pollution isnow than it was before. **SB**

a) bad b) worse c) worst d) the worst

13. There is a lot of traffic in Cairo; it isthan Marsa Alam. **SB**

a- noisier b- more noisier c- noisest d- noise

14. Ali says that football is not as handball. **SB**

a-so difficult b.the most difficult c. more difficult d. less difficult

15. Figs are as chocolate. **SB**

a-so delicious b. most delicious c. more delicious d. as delicious

16. Our house is.....comfortable than this hotel.

a) more b) most c) much d) little

17. Sarah is..... than her sister.

a) more young b) young c) younger d) youngest

18. Cars are.....than motorbikes.

a) safe b) safer c) more safer d) safest

19. Sharks are.....than lions.

a) dangerous b) more dangerous c) much dangerous d) most dangerous

20- Hassan is afootball player than anyone else in the team.

- a) good b) best c) better d) the best
- 21- We can run as..... as they can.
- a) faster b) fast c) fastest d) the fastest
- 22- I do not earn as.....money as you do.
- a) much b) more c) less d) many
- 23- Mount Everest isthan Mount Kilimanjaro
- a- higher b- high c- highest d- highly
24. The museum is usually.....on a Saturday than a Sunday.
- a- crowded b- most crowded c- more crowded d- as crowded
- 25- I think the blue dress is.....than the red dress.
- a- nicer b- nicest c- nicely d- nice
26. Adel is tall, but Rami is.....
- a- more taller b- tallest c- tall d- taller
- 27.-- which bridge is....., the 6th October bridge or the Qasr El Nil bridge?
- a- long b- longer c- longest d- longer than
- 28- English is.....than many other languages.
- a) easier b) more easy c) easiest d) the easiest
- 29- We can run as..... as they can.
- a) faster b) fast c) fastest d) the fastest
- 30- Football is.....popular game in Egypt.
- a) most b) the most c) less d) more
- 31- Which sport is....., football or tennis?
- a) good b) better c) better than d) the best
- 32.....the thief caught by the police officer?
- a) Is b) Has c) Does d) Will
33. In summer, more ice cream.....than in winter.
- a) ate b) eats c) is eating d) is eaten
34. The flowers are watered..... my brother every morning.
- a) of b) at c) with d) by
35. This writer's articles.....by many people.
- a) read b) are read c) are reading d) reading
36. German.....as a second language in our school.
- a) is speaking b) speaking c) speaks d) is spoken
37. Petrol..... from oil.
- a) making b) made c) is made d) makes
38. The walls aren't.....by my mother.
- a) painted b) painting c) paint d) paints
39. My room.....every day.
- a) was cleaned b) is cleaning c) is cleaned d) cleans
40. The new museum isfrom Cairo than the old museum.
- a) far b) the furthest c) furthest d) further

5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1- No one in class is(tallest) than Reem.
- 2- Cairo is.....(most) crowded than Giza.
- 3- An elephant is(big) than a camel.
- 4- Today it's not(windy as) yesterday
- 5- That mountain was(high) than we thought.
- 6- Cheese is.....(bad) for you than fruit.
- 7- This tablet is.....(expensive) than that one.
- 8- Cairo is the.....(big)city in Africa.
- 9- Tennis is.....(least)dangerous than football.
- 10- He was the.....(better) player in the team.
- 11- The hotel by the park is the.....(modern) hotel in the city
- 12- The market is.....(far) from my house than the school



- 13- Who has the.....(faster) car in the city?
- 14- My grandfather is.....(the older) in our family
- 15-Ali is as short(than) basketball.
- 16-What's.....(longest) river in the world?
- 17-Habiba is..... (good) than Sandy.
- 18.Giza.....(knows) for its ancient pyramids, . WB
- 19.Farmers(are grown) a lot of oranges along the river. WB
- 20.Thousands of fish.....(catch) every day. WB
- 21.Mr Taha(has remembered) for his funny stories. WB
- 22.People..... (are played) football all around the world. WB
- 23.Cotton clothes..... (made) in Egypt.. WB
- 24.Hundreds of photos of the Pyramids are.....(taking) every day. WB
- 25.....(Does) Minya known for black honey?
- 26.Where is your home city.....(locates)?
- 27.We(playing) football every day.
- 28.Milk is..... (keeping) in the fridge.
- 29.....(Do) famous places visited by tourists?

6-Write a paragraph of six (80) words on
Climate change

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Recycling

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

My home city

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

How to help the environment

.....

.....

.....

.....





unit1

Coming Home

come home	يعود للمنزل	Routine	روتين
sofa	اريكة	interests	اهتمامات
daily	يومية	country	بلد
daughter	ابنه	block	مبنى سكني
is called	يسمى / يدعى	chess	الشطرنج
interview	حوار	blog	مدونة
talk about	يتكلم عن	Red tape	روتين حكومي
free time	وقت الفراغ	Spare time	وقت فراغ
(Do)activities	انشطة		
(at) weekend	نهاية الاسبوع		
Spend-spent	يقضي- ينفق		

The present simple tense

usage

1- To express facts:

e.g. The sun **rises** in the morning.

e.g. It **is** hot in summer.

e.g. When we **heat** water it **boils**.

2- To express habits(routine)

e.g. I **play** tennis on Fridays.

e.g. She **brushes** her teeth every morning

e.g. My father **often gets** up early

3- Timetable\ fixed times.

e.g. The train **leaves** at 3 o'clock tomorrow.

e.g. The plane **arrives** at 6.

e.g. My school **starts** at 7 in the morning

Form

(I- you- we- they\ plurals) + inf

I **usually go** to school on foot.

They **walk** to school everyday.

I **never stay** up very late.

(he-she- it\ singular)+ (s/es/ies)

My father **always drives** me to my school

My **sister always helps** mum in the kitchen.

Read and correct the underlined word:

1- I sometimes feels tired when I get home.
(feel)

2- Mariam get up at 6 in the morning.
(gets up)

3-My mum always make me my breakfast .
(makes)

4- Ali and I often going to the club on Fridays.
(go)

5- Nada never speak English.
(speaks)

6-Do she like watching English films?
(Does)

unit1

Coming Home

Reading I.1

About Mariam

I am Mariam. My daily routine is the same every school day! I always get up at 6:30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I go to school by bus with my friend, Dina. Sometimes, we listen to music. My parents work at the hospital. They get home late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa, watch TV and text my friends. Then I go to bed.

Ex: Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Ali usually plays In histime.
A-full b-busy c-free d-all
- 2-My cousin lives with his family in a of flats.
A-pack b-group c-flock d-block.
- 3- Mr. Ali often to work on time.
A- arrives v-reaches c-gets c-runs.
- 4-Reading is my favourite
A- happy b- hobby c-custom d-sport
- 5-Haitham writes a post on his
A-blog b-internet c-hobby d-subject
- 6-When we do the same thing everyday it is called.....
A- red tape b- route c- routine d-way
- 7-I saw Ahmed's father his way to work.
A-in b- at c- on d- above

sports	رياضة	role-play game	لعبة تبديل الادوار
baker's	محل الخباز	attractive	جذاب
(do)exercise	يتمرن	poor # rich	فقير اغني
important	مهم	prison	سجن
complete	يكمل	adventure	مغامرة
partner	شريك	Ending	نهاية
typical day	يوم نموذجي	change	يتغير
tap	حنقية	Feed-fed	يطعم
Borrow	يستعير	Beginning	بداية
Lend	يسلف		
forget	ينسى		
railway line	خط سكة حديد		



unit1

Coming Home

Notes

وسيلة مواصلات by +

We go to school **by car**.

in + (a\my\his) + car / taxi

My father goes to his work **in his car**.

on + (a\my\his) + bus / train / plane / ship

I often travel to Alex. **On a train**.

على الأقدام On foot

We go to school **on foot**.مكان + get to
مكان + ReachHe **got to** the club at 7.He **reached** the club at 7.Choose the coorrect answer:

1-Do you lunch at school?

a-Do b- have c-made d- help2-Judy Always helps her mother to Dinner.a-take b- have c- make d- do.

3-Salma likes to Her friends using her mobile everyday.

a-Listen b- study c- text d- think

4- I go to the baker's with my mother

a-Day b- days c- daily d- dial

5- come and sit on this It is comfortable.

a- Sofa b- bag c- soft d- text

6- Engy's family was so They couldn't buy her new clothes.

a-Rich b- poor c- ugly d- beautifulLives around the world Reading text I.3

My name is Shahana. I am from India. I live in a **village** with my **parents**, my brother and my sister. I **share** a **room** with my sister. We all **get up** early. There is an **outside tap at the end of** the street where we live. My Mum **gets water** from the **tap** every morning. Then we all **have breakfast**. We have **bread** with a **cup of tea**. My dad **works** in a shop.

I have two **jobs** to **do** when I **get home** from school. I **feed** the chickens, then I help my mum **make dinner**. After dinner, I **do** my **homework**. Sometimes I help my brother and sister to **do** their **homework**, too. Then I go to bed.

Read and correct:1- What do Ali and his brothers get to school?

(How\when)

2- I often reads books.

(read)

3- what time does students come from the school?

(do)

4- Mariam watches often TV. In bed.

(often watches)

5- She always make dinner for her parents.

(makes)

6- How many people is in your family?

(are)

7- I go to school at my brothers.

(with)

unit1

Coming Home

The Railway children Reading text 1.4

It is the 1900s. Roberta, her younger brother Peter and their little sister, Phyllis **live** with their **parents** in London. They have a big, **attractive home** with a large garden. One **terrible** day, two men **take** their father **away from** home. The children **don't know** where he is going or why.

The children **move from** the city with their mother to a small house near a **railway line**. The family are **poor** and life is very **different** for them. The children have lots of **adventures** near the **railway line**. A **kind old man** who **travels on the train** every day, becomes their friend.

The old man helps the family in many ways. He **helps** their father too because their father is in **prison** for something he didn't do. Finally, their father **comes home**. The family is so happy to be together again **at last**.

Ex: Choose the correct answer:

- I like to read a story with a happy
a- ending b- ends c- engine d- prison
- They move a small simple house.
a- Two b- too c- to d- form
- Near their new home, there is a railway
a- Nine b- fine c- line d- shine
- The word Means beautiful.
a- terrible b- ugly c- attractive d- sad.
- He was sent to as he did something wrong.
a- School b- bank c- garden d- prison

word	meaning	word	meaning
pen friend	صديق مراسلة	lamp	كشاف / مصباح
city	مدينة	bookshelf	رف الكتب
beautiful	جميل	curtains	ستائر
natural	طبيعي	armchair	كرسي بمسند
reserves	محميات	Prison	سجن
nearby	قريب	German	ألماني
flat	شقة	email	إيميل / بريد الكتروني
downstairs	الدور الأرضي	(at)break	فسحة
shopping	التسوق	description	وصف
Share	يشارك	(do) job	
computer games	ألعاب كمبيوتر		
practise	يمارس		
basin	حوض		
carpet	سجادة		
bedroom	حجرة النوم		

Find a pen friend! Reading text 1.6

It is very nice to meet you . I am from El Fayoum. It is a large city with beautiful nature reserves nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs.

On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping, then I read or do my homework. In the afternoons, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother. My favourite subjects are maths and English. I am looking for a pen friend because I want to practise my English!

unit1

Coming Home

New Message reading text I.7

Hi Abdu!

Thanks for being my pen friend. I am from England, I get up at about half past seven, and then my mum makes breakfast for the family. I walk to school with my brother. Our school finishes at three o'clock. After school, we sometimes do sports or play music. I don't watch TV when I get home, I always do my homework first. Tell me about your typical daily routine in Germany!

Dan

Hi Dan!

Thanks for your email. In German, school starts very early in the morning. So I don't have breakfast before school. There is a breakfast break after the first lesson. How many lessons does your school have every day?

Choose the correct answer:

1-We have a beautifulon the floor In front of the Irving room

a) fridge b- curtain c- carpet d- TV

2- Al Fayoum has many..... reserves which you can visit.

a) traditional b) tradition c-nature d- piece

3- My tittle sister always looks at the to see herself in it.

a) carpet b) curtain c- drawer d)mirror

4- students should English every day to be perfect.

a) tell b) practise c) owns d- forget

5- I have a in my bedroom to put all my books on.

a- wardrobe b-mirror c) bookshelf d-carpets

6- I'd like to sit..... to my mother when we eat.

a) above b- in front c- under d next

Reading text I.7

I love my bedroom! I have a big white wardrobe in the corner. Next to it " is a mirror I look at myself in it in the mirror. I also have a small bookshelf where I put my books. Next to this, there is a big window. I have blue curtains on this. I close them at night. I also have a red lamp next to my bed I use it to read before I go to sleep. Also in my bedroom, there is a grey armchair I sit and read my book sometimes. There is also a cupboard I put my T-shirts, socks and other clothes in this. Finally there is a big carpet on the floor.

Ex : Read and correct the following:

Have you get another cake ?

got

2. Ali don't play tennis on Friday

doesn't

3-How have you spend your free time?

do

4-I always arrive at school late, so my teachers like me very much

never

5-A lot of people speaks English.

speak

6-what times is dinner ready ?

time

7-Adel want to buy a modern car

wants

unit2

How Are You Feeling?

feel, felt	يشعر
call centre worker	عامل مركز الاتصال
Computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر
Police officer	ضابط شرطة
food stall	كشك الطعام
Look after	يعتني بـ
bored	يشعر بالملل
quite	الى حد ما
quiet	هادئ
Sign language	لغة الاشارة
sewing	الخياطة
feel hungry	يشعر بالجوع
Ward	جناح

deaf	أصم
Look forward to	يتطلع الي
breakfast	الافطار
repair / fix / mend	يصلح
Communicate with	يتواصل مع
communicate in	يتواصل بـ
disabled	معاق
blind / can't see	كفيف
Feel tired	يشعر بالتعب

Notes

look after
look forward to
look for
look up
look like

Look

A nurse looks after patients.

I am looking forward to travelling abroad.

I feel hungry. I will have my lunch.

I feel thirsty, give me a glass of water.

The present con tense

usage

1-Actions are happening now(at the time of speaking)

Temporary situations or actions

e.g. He is having his lunch now.

e.g. I am reading a story.

e.g. They are painting the school this week.

2- form

Sub+(am - is - are) + +ing.

e.g. She is brushing her teeth at the moment.

e.g. Soha and Manal are washing the dishes at the present.

3- negative form

Sub+(am not - is not - are not) + +ing.

e.g. They aren't painting now.

e.g. he is not playing the piano right now

Keywords:

now - at the moment - at present - look- listen -

still - today - this (week - morning)

working today.

Listen! Amr is crying.

Question form:

Wh+ am+ is+ are+ S+ ing

What are you doing?

What is he reading?

am+ / is+ / are+ S+ ing

Is he watching the film?

Are they listening to music?

unit2

How Are You Feeling?

Read and correct the underlined word:

1- He's run because he is late for his school.

(running)

2- Be quiet. The baby sleep.

(is sleeping)

3- Does she working at the moment?

(Is)

4- I am sorry, I cant hear you what you saying.

(are saying)

5- I am working today. I am on a holiday.

(am not)

6- what he is having now?

(is he)

Am in Cairo

Reading I. 1

A. I am **looking after patients** at a hospital. It is very **busy**. I am **looking after children** in the **children's ward**. I like my job, but I am **feeling tired** tonight. I am **looking forward to going home** and having a rest.

Amal

B. We are **driving** around the city and **making sure** that people are safe in the streets. We aren't very **busy tonight**. It is cold so everyone is **staying at home**. Adel's **feeling a bit bored** and I am **feeling hungry**. I am **looking forward to breakfast**.

Imad and Adel

Reading

C. I am **parking my food stall** here because it is the best place in the city. Lots of people and **tourists** come this way. People **start to buy breakfast** at 6 a.m. I am **getting everything ready**. I am **feeling cold** and I am **looking forward to drinking some hot coffee**!

Kamal

Ex: Choose the correct answer:

1- Aya is a nurse she helps her To get better.

A-illness

b- patients

c-medicines

d-disease

2- He likes drawing. He want to be

A-teacher

b- doctor

c-engineer

d- artist.

3-Deaf people communicate Sign language.

A- with

b- in

c-to

c-from.

He lives next door. He is my

A- neighbour

b-classmate

d-servant

d-patient

5-He sells many things in the street. He has a small

A-basket

b-wall

c- stall

d-farm

6- He answers customer's call in a big store. He is a Centre.

A- call-centre

b- centre

c- ship

d-caller

7- A person can't see.

A-Deaf

b- dumb

c- blind

d- strong



unit2

How Are You Feeling?

make sure	يتأكد	Invite	يدعو
tips	نصائح	Suit	يناسب
Teenagers	مراهقين	Suitcase	حقيرة سفر
Pattern	نموذج / شكل	Grateful	ممتن
Striped	مخطط	Playground	ملعب
Guest	ضيف	Careless	مهمل
Smile	يبتسم		
Background	خلفية (صورة)		
Foreground	في المقدمة		
Towards	اتجاه		
Selfie	سيلفي		
Hang-hung	يعلق		

Reading 1.3

This is a **photo** of me and my family in Al Azhar Park in Cairo. My mother and my sisters are **sitting under** a tree in the **foreground** of the photo. In the **background**, you can see the Umm Sultan Shaban Mosque. The tree is **towards** the right of the photo and my **eldest** sister Reem is **sitting in front of** it.

Our mother is behind her, we can't see her face. My **middle** sister Talia is in the **middle of** the picture. She is **taking a selfie** as usual! Our aunt is **behind** them, down the **hill** and on the **left**. I think she is **getting ready** to take a photo, too.

Reading

Happiness for teenagers

it is **normal** to get **worried** or feel sad sometimes -but what helps teenagers to feel happy? We found five things that can help.

1. Get lots of rest

Teenagers often don't sleep **enough**, but this is a time in your life when you **need** a lot of sleep. Young people " who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier.

2. Be friendly

it is good to be **alone** sometimes, but people need people **Spend** time with your family and also try to **make** new **friends** because this **makes** teenagers happy.

3. Go outside;

People need **nature** to be happy. Go to desert or the river or if you live in the city, go to a park.

4. Help someone

When you do something **kind** for someone else, this **makes** you **feel** happy, too. Try it, You feel really good.

5. Be grateful

One of the **best** ways to be happy is to **remember** the good things in your life and feel **pleased** about them

The adverbs of manners

usage

They are used to describe the verb

His voice is **loud**.

He **speaks** **loudly**

We add (ly) (ily) at the end of the adj. with the regular adverbs

e.g. he is **quick**.

e.g. he runs **quickly**.

e.g. The exam is **easy**.

e.g. I answered the exam **easily**.

2- irregular adverb

good- well

Hard-hard

Late-late=fast=fast

Early-early.

He runs **fast**.

He studies **hard**





unit2

How Are You Feeling?

Ex: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1-He is a (well. good. Badly-. quietly) swimmer.
- 2-He plays football(good - bad - well - clever)
- 3-She is clever . She studies(hard - good - bad - hardly)
- 4-In March it often rains(heavy - slow - quick - heavily)
- 5-I am so happy. I have (succeeded-passed-won- earned) my exams.
- 6-I always help my mum(prepare- repair- sell-do) the breakfast.

Read and correct:

- 1- My sister usually is going to school by bus.
- 2- We need a computer engineer to sail our computer.
- 3- Your father can bark the car on this road. It is safe.

(goes).
(repair)
(park)

Congratulations	مبروك	A problem with	مشكله فـ
Must be	اكيد	respond to	يرد علي
pity	شفقه	Make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
Difficult	صعب	Suitable	مناسب
online	اونلاين	Get on a plane	يركب طائره
amazing	مذهل ادهش		
mistake	خطأ		
Computer system	نظام الحاسب الالى		
exam	امتحان		
sorry to hear that	اسف لسماع ذلك		
do an interview	يجري مقابلة		
Go sailing	يذهب للابحار		

Reading I.5

Hi Salma,

How are you? hope you are **enjoying** your new school. We really **miss** You • I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs. Al-Gamal is **leaving**! She is such a **good science teacher** and we are **feeling** very sad ,but I have some good **news** , too. **Guess** what! My parents say I can go on the **school trip** to Amman. I am very **excited** . There are many **amazing** places to visit there. The **trip** is in March and I **can't** wait. So what's your **news**? Write soon!

Injy

unit2

How Are You Feeling?

Reading1.6

Hi Tarek,

How is it going? Congratulations on passing your maths test! Do you have more exams next term? The news from me is that we are moving to a new house! I'm so excited because my bedroom in the new house is very big. I have some bad news, too. I'm sharing the room with my brother!

But this is only for a week until his room is ready. I'm looking forward to meeting you in the summer. Do you want to go swimming or sailing at the beach this year? I can't wait to see you.

Write soon! Tamer

Complete the following dialogue:

Soha : Where are you going ?

Hanaa : I'm going to the (1) Sports centre

Soha : The sports centre ? What sport do you (2) do?

Hanaa : I like (3) swimming

Soha : Oh, swimming is wonderful (4) sport

Hanaa : You will be happy if you come with me.

Soha : How (5) oftendo you go there ?

Hanaa : Three times a week.

Complete the following dialogue:

Maher : Good morning. When is your birthday, Samy ?

Samy : Good morning (1) it is on 27th July.

Maher : Where do you usually do it ?

Samy : At (2) homewith my family.

Maher : (3) Do youget many presents ?

Samy : Yes, I get about ten.

Maher : When do you usually do it ?

Samy : (4) At 7 p.m

Maher : What would you like me to buy for you ?

Samy : (5) Thanks. It is kind of you

unit3

Great Jobs

Attack	يهاجم
Cancer	مرض السرطان
Disease	مرض
Expert	خبير
Heart	قلب
Improve	يحسن
Modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة
Volunteer	متطوع
Teamwork	عمل جماعي
Charity worker	عامل في جمعية خيرية
Nuclear scientist	عالم نووي
Heart surgeon	جراح قلب

Treatment	علاج
Find out	يكتشف
Special	خاص
Private	خاص
Win-win	يفوز
World cup	كأس العالم
Competition	مسابقة
foundation	مؤسسة

The past simple tense

usage

1-Actions started and finished in the past

e.g. I visited my uncle yesterday.
e.g. I played tennis last week.
e.g. They went to the cinema.

2-Telling a story

2- form

2nd form of a verb. (d-ed-ied) with the regular verbs
e.g. I washed my car yesterday.

Irregular verbs: eat-ate see-saw take-took catch-caught

3- question form

wh +(did+ s-) + +inf
e.g. What did you eat yesterday?
e.g. Where did he go?

Keywords:

Yesterday- last- ago- in the past- in 2019 [I went to the cinema two days ago.]
My father was born in 1970.

Negative form:

sub+ didn't+ +inf

e.g. I didn't go to my school yesterday because I was ill.
e.g. They didn't wear the school uniform.

Read and correct the underlined word:

- 1- He go to the cinema last week. (went)
- 2- I visited my grandfather next week. (last)
- 3- Does she lose her computer yesterday?. (Did)
- 4- I take many photos of the pyramids 2 days ago.. (took)
- 5- He is at his school last Sunday. (was)
- 6- where he was yesterday? (was he)

unit3

Great Jobs

Reading 1.2

Egyptian heroes

The **Egyptian handball** team are **heroes**! They **won** the handball **Africa Cup of Nations** in Tunisia in 2020. They **won** the final **against** Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa! This is not the first time **Egypt's handball** team played in a final. In 2019, the **junior** team won the under-19 World Cup Final 32-28 **against** Germany.

They were the **first team** from Africa to win it. In 2018, the **senior** team were also in the **final** of the **Africa Cup of Nations**, but lost the final against Tunisia. Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's **hope** the **Egyptian team** can win **competitions** again!

Reading 1.2

My brother Ahmed **loves playing** handball, and he's very **good at** it. When he was eight, he played in a **junior competition** for a team in our **city**. The team didn't , but it was in the **final**. Ahmed is now 21 and last year, he played for an important **senior** team. He was very **pleased**. Next year, the team are **playing** in an important **competition**. I hope they win it!

EX: choose

- 1- A (**sports coach- charity worker- scientist- police officer**) helps people or animals that need help.
- 2- The Egyptian handball team won an important (**development- experiment- competition- completion**).
- 3- Mo Salah plays (**in- on- for- to**) Liverpool in England.
- 4- My brother played in a (**junior- week- senior- won**) team when he was 8.
- 5- Working in a group is called (**homework- manual team- teamwork- housework**).
- 6- My cousin died from (**cancer- flu- kidney- heart**) disease. It is a dangerous disease.

Charity	جمعية خيرية
Countryside	الريف
Earthquake	زلازل
Health emergency	طوارئ الصحة
Natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
Proud	فخور
Scary	مخيف
Serious	حاد اجاد
Blood	دم
Burn	يحرق
Breathe	يتنفس
Brain	مخ
head	راس

Mend	يصلح
Pump	يضخ
Plant	يزرع
Lungs	رئته
Stomach	معدده
Street cleaner	عامل نظافه
Take in air	يتنفس
Difference	اختلاف
Rubbish collector	جامع القمامه

unit3

Great Jobs

Used to (Inf)

usage

Habits were true in the past

I used to play in the street.

They used to swim when they were young.

2-Negative form

S+ didn't + use to + inf

e.g. I didn't use to smoke.

e.g. he didn't use to swim when he was young..

3- Question form

Wh+ did+ S+ use to + inf / did+ s+ use to + inf

What did you use to do when you were young?

Did you use to go swimming?

Reading:1.3

Magdy Yacoub We should all be proud of Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he used to work in a special hospital in London. At this hospital.

Magdy used to help to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

Reading 1.4

Ancient Egyptian doctors We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients because they wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago. The body Ancient Egyptian doctors understood that the heart pumps blood around the body.

However, they used to think that the heart also pumped air to our lungs! They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain did, but they did not know how important it was Ways to help Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop infections.

We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend broken bones and sew cuts, but they didn't use to know everything. For example, they used to think that an animal's eye helped people who could not see.

Reading 1.5

My heroic mother Today, my mother is an important nurse, Mrs Karima Mohamed, but I know that her life used to be difficult. She studied to be a nurse at Ain Shams University and used to work as a nurse, too, sometimes at night, to learn all she could.

She then got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She continued to work hard but did not stop her studies, and soon she became one of the most important nurses in Cairo. Now, she works in a big hospital in New Cairo. In 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks.

It was difficult, but heroic work, because most of them got better. She is also a manager and she helps to teach younger nurses. I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very hard to get an important job and now she helps people every day. She always tells me that education is very important, and that if I work hard, I can do anything

unit3

Great Jobs

choose

1- This nurse won a prize for herwork.

a silly b-useless c-heroic d-ugly

2- My father works as a/an.....in a big factory.

a manager b teacher c tour guide d farmer

3- Are you taller.....your brother?

a that b then c this d than

4- You should be.....that the food you eat is healthy.

a true b sure c care d able

5- I don't think I.....the answer to this question.

a know b show c no d go

6- The little girl is alwaysof dogs. She doesn't like them

a scary b proud c scared d fond

7- Athens is a great city and the Parthenon is.....most famous building.

a it is b it's c its' d its

Ex: Correct

1- Hossam used to play squash. Now, he didn't.

(doesn't)

2- A long time since, I went to London.

(ago)

3- How did you used to go to school?

(use)

4- Do you use to have a lot of homework?

(Did)

5- My father used to worked in a tourist company five years ago.

(work)

6- Before he had children, Yasser's grandfather doesn't use to know how to drive

(didn't)

7- What do your father use to do in the past?

(did)

8- When I was young, I used to playing tennis.

(play)

9- What games did you used to play with your friends?

(use)



unit4

Into The part

Arch	قوس / قنطرة	Review	مقال نقدي
Castle	قلعه	Bring- brought	يحضر
Culture	ثقافته	Picnic	نزهه
Entrance	مدخل	View	منظر طبيعي
Historic	تاريخي	Recommend	يوصي
National	قومي	Figure	شكل
Pray	يصلي	Chemical	كيميائي
ruins	اطلال	Ingredients	مكونات
Ancient	قديم	customer	زبون
Behave	يتصرف		
Protect	يحمي		
temple	معبد		

Obligation and necessity

Must\ mustn't

تعبير عن الالتزام والضرورة
S+ must + inf.

- e.g. You **must arrive** on time.
e.g. you **must listen** to your teacher
e.g. you **must take** your medicine.

S+ mustn't+ inf

- You **mustn't be** late for school.
You **mustn't drive** fast.

3- question form
Must+ s+ inf

- e.g. **Must we put** rubbish in the bin?

Read and correct:

- 1- Tt school, you **mustn't** listen to your teacher. (must)
- 2- you must **turning** off the lights before sleeping. (turn)
- 3- you **mustn't** do the housework. Our mother is very ill. (must)
- 4- you **mustn't to** forget your bag and books. (mustn't)

Reading I.1

It is a long walk to the **temple**, so you must all listen **carefully**.
It is hot today, so you must all **wear** a hat. You **must take** some water, **too**. Cars **mustn't drive** on this **road** so we can walk on it **safely**. However, you **mustn't stay** on the road and you **must walk**. You **mustn't run**. When we arrive at the **temple**.

You **mustn't touch** any of the **building** because it is very old.
We can **eat** our **picnic lunches** after we visit the temple, but you **mustn't eat** in the temple.

Finally, you **mustn't forget** to write about what you see.

Reading.I.2

An amazing day out!

I visited Abydos **last** week with my cousins. There's so much to see **temples**, **amazing** art and **ruins** in the desert. I'm not usually very **interested** in history, but this place is **awesome**.

Maged, Cairo

Get a guide

The **ruins** at the Karnak Temple were **amazing** and we really **enjoyed** our visit! It's a big place, so you need three or four hours to **walk around** it is also a good idea to **get a guide** to tell you all about **history**.

Leila, Assyut

Go back to Roman times!

I **visited** the Roman theatre in Alex. With my cousins last week. It is easy to **imagine** what life in Roman times was like here. There are also **statues** and the **ruins** of a temple in the museum there. It was great fun.

unit4

Into The part

choose

- 1- When I look out of my bedroom window, I have a beautiful
 A- location b- sight c- view d- review
- 2- Many people are interested watching football matches.
 A- in b- at c- on d- onto
- 3- This book is very interesting. I It to you.
 A- advise b- recommend c- tell d- say
- 4- The trip was it was amazing.
 A- scary b- pleased c- awesome d- boring
- 5- Children must learn how to Politely all the time.
 A- treat b- behave c- do d- make
- 6- I love places like Abu simple temple.
 A- historic b- history c- modern d- new
- 7- Tourists need a to give them information about the sites.
 a- teacher b- doctor c- guide d- nurse
- 8- A figure is a of a person.
 a- temple b- museum c- model d- tower

Reading L.2

My trip to Petra

I love historic places like Petra in Jordan. it dates to around 300 BCE, so it is more than two thousand years old! You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you Can walk for a long way through the old city and the view from some of the higher places are awesome. but you must be careful! Our guide explained how old the temples are: they are really interesting. I enjoyed our day there and recommend a visit!

Bowl	سلطانية
Design	يصمم
Necklace	عقد
Ring	خاتم
Insect	حشرة
Tool	اداة
Web page	صفحة
Popular	محبوب
Opening times	وقت مفتوح
Company	شركة
Damage	يتلف
Century	قرن
Debate	مناقشه/مناظره/جدال

Local people	السكان المحليون
Tourism	السياحة
Special	خاص
War	حرب
Injure	يجرح
Storm	عاصفه

Reading 4

Objects from Egypt's past :

Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt, many people use mirrors to help them paint around the eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were metal and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing ingredients for bread in bowls, others people got into the bowl and used their feet to mix the ingredients! how do we make bread today ?

The Ancient Egyptians like playing games like senet. Senet boxes have 30 squares This boxes is made of wood and is about 3500 years old. Some people didn't have the senet boxes, but they still played the game, they drew the squares on the floor what games are popular in Egypt today?

unit4

Into The part

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- some boys wear (shorts- skirts- masks- shirts) to frighten girls.
- 2- people wear sunglasses to (affect- protect-infect- give) their eyes.
- 3- the shop is very crowded today. There are many (waiters- customers- sellers- objects).
- 4- people used bowls to (mix- fix- repair- mend) ingredients.
- 5- a (bowl- can- figure- castle) is a model of a person.
- 6- my sister tries to (make- do- paint- mix) bread at home.
- 7- The king or the president is the (rule – rules – ruler – triangle) of his country .
- 8- (modern-ancient-new-latest) Egyptians were known for their famous buildings as the pyramids.
- 9- Those who pollute the environment , (mend – fix – damage – ruin) our health.
- 10-This historic building (history – dates – back – pass) to the 4th century .
- 11- This mask can protect you (in – at – from – of) COVID19 infection.

The past cont.

usage

To talk about actions that were in progress at a certain time during the past

Amal **was playing** tennis at 3 yesterday.They **were washing** their car yesterday morning.

2- form

I he- she- it + was+ ing

She **was having** her meal at 4.She **was cooking** dinner.

You- we- they+ were_ ing

They **were watching** the English film

3- question form

Wh+ was\were+ s+ ing

What **was he doing** yesterday evening?While\as
when

usage

While\as

While\as I **was eating** , my father came.My father **came** while I **was eating**While I **was studying**, the phone **rang**

when

When the phone **rang**, I **was studying**.When my father **came**, I **was eating**.

While\as past cont.

past simple.

When past simple past cont.

Ex : Correct

- 1- They have tea when the door bell rang.
(were having)
- 2- we were playing tennis when Ali was hurting his leg.
(hurt)
- 3- the boy didn't play because it raining.
(was raining)
- 4- what you were doing at 3 yesterday?
(were you)
- 5- I was sweeping the floor as I heard a noise.
(when)
- 6- They forget their books yesterday.
(forgot)

unit4

Into The part

Reading I.5

While we were visiting the beach last month, we decided it was a great place to build a new hotel. The hotel will give work to a lot of people. We are a big company, so we can ask people from our city hotels to work here in the summer. We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel. There is not much water while we were driving to the area, we saw a big lake. This is the time when the hotel will be busy. Let me know what you think of our plan.

Reading I.6

Where are the stone circles?

There are more than 1,000 stone circles of Senegambia. They follow the River Gambia for 350km. Across two countries: Senegal and Gambia.

Why are the stones important?

The stone circles are very important to the history of Senegal and Gambia. They tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

How old are those stone circles?

The oldest circles are around 2,300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old. This means that people were building the circles for more than 1,800 years.

Can tourists visit them?

Tourists can visit them, but they mustn't damage them. Money from tourists helps to pay for local people to look after the stones. It is important to protect the stones.

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

- While I ----- the film, I heard a loud noise outside.
a) watched b) was watching c) watch d) watching
- Muslims go to mosques to -----
a) play b) pray c) eat d) drink
- Father was very -----, so he went to bed early.
a) tyres b) tiring c) tired d) tear
- I ----- in Cairo three years ago – Now I live in Alexandria
a) live b) lived c) was living d) have lived
- Some people like watching the ----- of old buildings.
a) curtains b) lamps c) basin d) ruins
- Did he ----- some of his old friends at the theatre yesterday?
a) see b) saw c) to see d) seeing
- Sama ----- a nice dress last week.
a) wore b) wear c) wearing d) wears
- Factories smoke ----- a lot of air pollution.
a) make b) do c) take d) cancel
- What (are – do – did – were) you doing at 6.00 pm last night.
- You should (follow – give – forget – leave) your parents' advice

Ex: Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

- I played football when it rained.
(was playing)
- I send my friend an email yesterday.
(sent)
- The case was built by Salah Al-din.
(castle)
- You must go to station to pray.
(mosque\masjid)
- He didn't used to come late.
(use)
- Was you used to driving?
(Did)
- My father comes late yesterday.
(came)



unit5

Helping You, Helping me

Apartment	شقه	Advertisement	إعلان
Clothes	ملابس	Restaurant	مطعم
Boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	Stranger	غريب
Lift	يرقع	Thief	لص
Look after	يعتني بـ	Tips	نصائح
Make the bed	يرتب السرير	Borrow	يستعير
Rubbish	قمامه	Care about	يهتم بـ
Tidy	ينظم ويرتب	Community	مجتمع
Stairs	سلالم		
Put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه		
Purse	كيس		
kindness	لطف / عطف		

Have to \ has to

usage

We use **have to** when it is necessary to do something. You have no choice.

I- you- we- they (have to + inf)

e.g. I **have to get up** early.

e. They **have to wear** the school uniform.

He-she- singular (has to + inf)

My father **has to get up** early.

He **has to wear** the uniform

3- negative form

don't have to \ doesn't have to + inf

I **don't have to go** to work today. It is Friday.

Read and correct the following:

1- At school we haven't to wear a uniform.
(**don't have to**)

2- Does the boys have to get up early?
(**Do**)

3- We has to leave now

(**have**)

4- You have to go to your school today. It is holiday.

(**don't have to**)

Reading.I.1

We are going on a boat today. It is going to be hot. So you have to wear sunglasses and a hat. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous. Dina uses a wheelchair, so she has to go on the boat first. You all have to be careful when you get on the boat. You also have to sit down when the boat is moving, but you don't have to sit when the boat stops. You can stand up then. Finally, if you see a dolphin you have to tell us. That is why we are going!



unit5

Helping You, Helping me

Reading1.2

Random Acts of Kindness

In 1982, some friends were in a **restaurant** In California, USA They **wanted** to **make** the world **better**. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, **wrote down** her **idea**: practice **random acts** of **kindness**.

A **random act of kindness** is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason. You can do **random acts of kindness** for the people you know: for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind for **strangers**. For example, **give** your **seat** to someone **on a bus**.

Now February 17th is Random Acts of Kindness Day. All over the world people **do kind things** for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to **smile** on a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic idea?

Ex: Choose

- Students (**take- do- make- have**) turns to answer the questions.
- When you are on a bus, you should (**take- give- touch- sell**) your seat to older people,
- These are (**tubes- tips- taps- tapes**) you should follow to be fit.
- Our children don't often talk to (**runners- waiters- strangers- designers**)
- I usually (**take up- watch up- look after- look up**) my sister when my parent are away.
- He lives on the 17th floor he always takes the (**steps- ladder- plane- lift**)
- My brother always puts his clothes (**away – in – up – down**) He is well-organised.
- The girl is very sad because she has lost her (**vase-bucket-pocket-purse**) of money.
- A mother usually gives me(**advice-advise-tips- taps**) and I take them happily .
- We should help the (**abled – strong – disabled – ability**)

Beggar	متسول
Cruel	قاسي
Pick up	يلتقط
Servant	خادم
Useful	مفيد
Reach	يصل
Delicious	لذيذ
Businesswoman	سيده اعمال
Give away	يتبرع
Pilot	طيار
Sailor	بحار
Passport	جواز سفر
Firefighter	رجل مطافي

As possible	علي قدر الامكان
soft	ناعم
Donate	يتبرع
Share	يشارك
canteen	كانتین

I work as **volunteer** for a **charity**, which helps to clean our **local beach**, At the **weekend**, we go to the beach and **Pick up** the **rubbish** that people **left behind**.. We always **pick**, up lots of **plastic bottles**!

Samir

It is good to help people in the **community**. I visit a home for old people who are **disabled**, so it's **difficult** for their families to **look after** them. I go there after school **on Thursdays**. The **volunteers** have a **special person** who we visit and talk to. The woman who I visit is called Mrs. Nahla. She **worked as** a **nurse** when she was young and she is a **fantastic person**. I **love talking** to her.

Fatma

I work for a **charity** which **looks after** animals that are old or **sick** and cannot **work** any more. People **donate** money to the **charity** to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels . We help to **feed** the animals and **look after** them. This camel is very old and she is my favourite animal.

Ahmed

unit5

Helping You, Helping me

Reading I.4

A Little Princess

Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school calls her a little princess, because her father is very rich. After Sara's father dies, the head teacher, Miss Michin, starts being cruel. To Sara because she has no money. She makes Sara work as a servant. Sara has to work very hard and doesn't get much food. However, she decides to behave like a real princess, so she is always kind and polite to everyone.

One day, Sara finds some money. She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she comes out, she sees a beggar and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see that this girl is cold and hungry. Sara thinks that a real princess should always be kind and generous like this. When the baker sees this, she is surprised. This girl is very strange. She is very poor, but she is kind to beggars, she thinks.

choose

- 1-A firefighter is the person who fights (fires – wars – planes – diseases)
- 2-You need a (letter – message – telegram – passport) to leave a country
- 3- The (seller – sailors – sails – sells) work on the ship to help the captain
- 4- The (pilot-actor- firefighter-guard) and the crew of the plane managed to land safely .
- 5- People don't like (kind – polite – cruel – good) people.
- 6-My little son gave his toys (up – off – in – away) to the poor children.
- 6-My neighbour is (helpful – unhelpful – unkind – cruel) .He always helps us.
- 7- My friend spent a lot of money (in – at – on – of) clothes last week.
- 8- In a science lesson , we go to the lab to (do – make – take – give) experiments.
- 9- He is asking people for money . He is a (clerk – doctor – engineer – beggar)
- 10-He can't walk so he uses a (chair – armchair – wheelchair – stool)

Relative clauses

usage

We use them to identify a person, thing or a place

Who(that) for people

This is the man who helped me.

This is the boy who \ that won the game.

Which (that) for things and animals:

This is the watch which I bought yesterday.

The present which (that) I bought for my sister is in my bag.

Where (places) without a preposition

This is the house where I live.

This is the house which I live in.

We bought a flat which is near the school.

Alex which is in the north of Egypt is very famous.

Reading I.5

Large charity donation

Fareeda El-Sadat, age 32, has donated the businesswoman says that she wants the charities to use the money to help , people who need it. Charities can decide to share the money between them or give them all the money to one charity. The important things is to help as many people as possible.

Lesson 7

I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes quite messy, so usually tidy up every evening before we go to bed we put away all our clothes and books. Twice a week, my brother and I take out the rubbish. We do it together because these bins are quite heavy. My parents donate money to a charity which helps a local school for disabled people we think it is important to help people in a community.

unit5



Helping You, Helping me

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- we arrived at a nice beach, (who-where-when-what) We could swim and sit in the sun.
- 2- the children (which- that- where- when) Shouted is over there.
- 3- Mr Ali, (who- which-whose- where) is a taxi driver, lives next door.
- 4-Bell was the man (which-who-whose-where) invented the telephone.
- 5- Shakespeare (which- who- whose - when) plays are still shown on TV was a great writer.
- 6-The day (when-where - who-which) we celebrate the New Year on is the first of January.
- 7-That's the house (whose- who- where - when) my uncle lives .
- 8-I can't buy you the car (who - whose - when - that) you asked for.
- 9-I have got a friend (who- whose - which - where) mother is a teacher.
- 10-Children go to the gardens (which- where - who- whose) they can play

Read the following passage, then answer the Questions :

Football is the most popular game in the world . Football was played in England for many years , but there were no rules . In 1863, the first rules for football were written to make the game safer . The most famous player in history is Pele . He is a Brazilian player .When he was a boy , he used to play for hours in the street with his friends . When he was 17 , he played for his country in the world cup . In 1961, he scored one of the best goals.

A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- Why were rules written for football ?
- 2- When did Pele play for his country .
- 3- What is Pele's nationality?

B) Choose and write the correct answer :

- 4- The first rules for football were written in (1961 – 1798- 1967 -1863) .
 - 5- Pele was a (lazy – bad – clever – well) player .
 - 6- is the most popular game in the world .
- a) Football b) Basketball c) Volleyball d) Handball



unit6

Diffrent Environments

Air pollution	تلوث الهواء
Canal	قناة
Electric	كهربائي
Changing world	العالم المتغير
Electricity	الكهرباء
Flood	فيضان
Report	تقرير
Melt	يذوب
Present	هدية
Planet	كوكب
Weather	طقس
attractive	جذاب

Important	مهم
Serious	جاد/حاد
Damage	يتلف
Metal can	علبة صفيح
Respect	يحترم
wildlife	الحياة البرية

Comparative adjectives

usage

We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people, places or things.

Adjective

(short adj. \ long adj.)

Short adj : tall- small- short- big-

Long adj.: interesting- dangerous- exciting

Short adj (adj+ er+ than)

Ali is taller than Mona.

Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimanjaro.

Long adj.(more\less+ adj + than)

The dog is less dangerous than the lion.

Football is more interesting than tennis.

Aswan is less crowded than Cairo.

Irregular adj.

Good- better than

Bad- worse than

Far- Further than.

Today's weather is better than yesterday's.

Amal is better than Dali at English.

(not) as+ adj.+ as

I think air pollution is as dangerous as water pollution.

Noha is as short as Eman.

Reading1.2

Today's presentation is about climate change. This means our planet is changing. Here are two places that are different now.

Australia:

In this line graph, the x-axis shows the change in temperature. You can see that the climate in Australia is becoming hotter and drier. Climate change means Australia is more dangerous place to live.

Mount Kilimanjaro:

This bar chart show that and drier weather is melting the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. You can see that the area of ice is much smaller than 140 years ago. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before. However, the ice is continuing to get smaller.



unit6

Diffrent Environments

Ex: Choose:

- There are so many cars in big cities and this cause much air
(pollute- pollutes- polluted- pollution)
- Mona is (more young- young- younger- youngest). Than her sister.
- The (environment- mark- temperature- mountain). Is getting higher because the climate is changing.
- We read (few- fewer- less- many). Books than before.
- Don't leave your (rubbish- children- tools- experiment) here. You should take it to the nearest bin.
- Air pollution leads (on - to -of - in) climate change
- The (climate - air - ice - weather) is windy today . we can't go out
- He prefers walking (long - belong - tall - along) the bank of the River Nile .
- Which do you think is (exciting-more exciting- most exciting-the most exciting). city in the world
- The big shark (attacked - like - loved - played) the diver and he was badly injured.

Pet	حيوان اليف
Prize	جائزه
Wildlife	الحياه البرية
Title	عنوان
Pray	يصلي
Position	موقع
Believe	يومن ايصديق
Topic	موضوع
Travel company	شركة سياحي
including	يشمل
Turtle	سلحفاه
(be) located	يوجد اتقع
Connected (to)	متصل بـ

Look after	يعتني بـ
Diagram	رسم توضيحي
Burn	يحرق
Aim	يهدف
Refuse	يرفض
Solution	حل
Solve	يحل
Remind	يذكر

The present simple
passive

usage

We use the passive form when we don't who does something

Active form:

Noha watches English films

S+V+O

Passive form

English films are watched by Noha.

O+ am\is\are+ p.p

The match **is** played.

The sandwiches **are eaten** By Soha.

3- question form

Is\are+ O+ p.p

Is your homework **done**?

Are famous places **visited** by the tourists?

correct

- where is your city locate?
(located)
- we are played football every day.
(play)
- in summer, ice cream eat than in winter.
(is eaten)
- petrol are made from oil.
(is made)
- clothes aren't sell in the shop.
(sold)
- cycling is the way we reuse old things to become new again.
(Recycling)
- Is your homework checking by the teacher?
(checked)
- Plastic is makes from oil
(made)
- Everest is the high ,mountain in the world.
(highest)



unit6

Diffrent Environments

Reading1.3

Spotlight on Port said

Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt. •

The city is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world. • Port Said is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal. Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

Spotlight on Tanta

Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.

Lots of cotton is grown in the area.

The city is known for its delicious sweets. •

Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi Mosque is visited by thousands of people every year.

My city home reading text 1.3

My home city" is Minya . It is located near the Nile. Lots of food is grown in the local area like potatoes, wheat and sugar. The city is known for its delicious "black honey"". The honey is made from sugar. Many ancient monuments and buildings are found in the city. My city is very beautiful and interesting! -
- inaction: - What's Minya known for?

Choose

- 1- I visited Al Ahmdi Mosque in Tanta and (~~dived~~- ~~fished~~- prayed- ~~played~~) In it.
- 2- (~~Tourism~~- Tourists-~~Guides~~- ~~Owners~~) Should look after the environment when they visit a country.
- 3-Minya has delcious black (honey- ~~rose~~- ~~flower~~- ~~cotton~~) Made from sugar.
- 4- farmers plant a lot of orange trees(a ~~long~~- along- ~~long~~- ~~longer~~) the river.
- 5- the wildlife on the Red Sea Coast is all nature (reserves- ~~laboratries~~- ~~monuments~~- ~~deserts~~)
- 6- I'm very clever at cooking, but my mother is (~~cleverer~~-~~clever~~-~~less clever~~- the cleverest) cook I've ever known.

Reading 1.4

The north hotel

The north Hotel is The located on a lovely beach and every year, the hotel is visited by more and more tourists. How ever , the hotel owner said that last year, there were year there were not as many turtles on the beach as usual. As a result, the hotel is helping the turtles. Parts of the beach are closed to tourists so that turtles are safe . And at night, when the turtles leave there eggs in the sand the workers stop any tourist from visiting the beach .

The south hotel

The south hotel is near the coast, and every year it takes tourist scuba diving. How ever , works on the boats believe that coral reefs are often damaged by scuba divers. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral reefs. Now some of the money that tourists pay for the boat trips is used to help protect the coral reefs.

The east hotel

The east hotel is very new. Only green energy from the sun and wind is used at the hotel. The hotel also produces very little rubbish most of it is recycled. All the fruit and vegetables at the hotel restaurant are grown on local farms and the people working at the hotel are all from the local villages.



unit6

Diffrent Environments

Reading 1.6

Students help to clean the river

Last weekend ten students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank, near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish". Their teacher, Mr. Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

"There were lots of plastic bags and bottles; he said. "We even found an old shoe!"

One of the students said, it was great to clean the river bank, but we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife. Well done to the volunteers.

e.x

Complete the following:

Hany: Hello , Ali.

Ali: Hi , Hany

Hany: I cant sleep at night. What can I do?

Ali: why You read a book or a story?

Hany: I tried reading, but it wasn't good.

Ali: you..... Drink some milk.

Hany: I don't It.

So. It is a idea to relax completely before you go to bed.

Hany: that's